



Manual for

FOMA® P905i

'07.10

Easy Search/ Contents/Precautions

Before Using the Handset

Voice/Videophone Calls

PushTalk

Phonebook

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion/ i-Channel

Mail

i-αppli

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

GPS Function

Full Browser

Data Display/Edit/Management

Music Playback

Other Convenient Functions

Character Entry

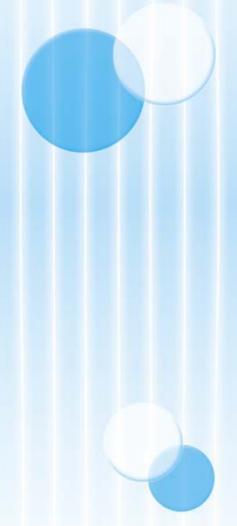
Network Services

Data Communication

Overseas Use

Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Index/Quick Manual







DoCoMo W-CDMA system

Thank you for selecting the "FOMA P905i".

Before or during use of the FOMA P905i, make sure that you read this manual and the separate manuals such as for the battery pack thoroughly so that you can use the FOMA P905i correctly. If you feel any inconvenience in reading the manual, contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed on the back page of this manual.

The FOMA P905i is designed to be your close partner.

Treat it carefully at all times to ensure long-term performance.

Before using your FOMA phone

Because the FOMA phones use radio waves, they cannot be used in places where radio waves do not reach, such as inside tunnels, underground, or in buildings; or the outside where radio waves are weak or out of the FOMA service area. They may not be used in the high-rise buildings even when the antennas are unobstructed. You may also experience interruption of calls even when using without moving while the radio waves are strong enough for the three antennas to appear on the display.

Use the FOMA phone carefully to avoid disturbing other people when in public, or in crowded or quiet places. Since the FOMA phones use radio waves as the medium of telecommunication, calls may be tapped by the third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports tapping prevention, so your conversation will be incomprehensible to the third party.

The FOMA phones change your voice into digital signals and send them to the other party. In places where the radio waves are weak, the digital signals may not be converted correctly, and in such a case, the voice may sound different from the actual original voice.

It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored in the FOMA phone and keep such notes in a safe place. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data stored in the phone.

The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifiers as listed herein make any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifiers shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.

Certifiers: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust, Inc., GeoTrust Japan, Inc., RSA Security Inc., and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd.

This FOMA phone supports FOMA Plus-Area.

The FOMA phone can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and in DoCoMo's roaming area.

For those who use the FOMA phone for the first time

If this is the first time for you to use the FOMA phone, read this manual in the order as described below. Then you will get acquainted with the outline of preparing and operating procedures for using your FOMA phone.

1.	Check "Safety Precautions"	P.12
2.	Attach and then charge the battery pack	P.41
3.	Turn on the power, set the initial settings, and check your phone number	P.45
4.	Check the keys on the FOMA phone for their roles	P.24
5.	Check the meanings of icons that appear on the display	P.26
6.	Learn how to operate the menus	P.31
7.	Get well acquainted how to make and receive calls	P.52

You can download the latest information about this manual from the following DoCoMo web site:

·User's Manual (PDF file) Download (http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html)

The URL and the content of the web site might be modified without notice.

How to Read/Refer to This Manual

In this manual, illustrations and symbols are used in the explanations so that you can easily understand how to use the FOMA phone correctly.

- The operating procedures and displays in this manual are described with the default settings of the "White" handset. However, they are described also with "Menu icon setting" set to "Pink gold", and "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" set to "OFF".
- Unless otherwise specified, the descriptions of the operating procedures in this manual start from the Stand-by display.
- Operations are described in the method of "Scroll Selection" (see page 31).
- Displays and illustrations described in this manual are for reference. The actual ones might differ.
- In this manual, "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli which supports the IC card function" is described as "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli".

How to Refer to This Manual

By the following search methods, you can find pages where your desired functions and services are described:

From the Index

Search from the index when you know the names of functions or services.

From Easy Search

Search from keywords for the functions you frequently use or the functions that are convenient if you can know any.

From the Tabs on the Cover

Search from the tabs printed on the cover.

See the next page for details.

From the Contents



Search from the contents that categorize functions.

From the Main Functions



Search from the main functions when you want to use.

From the Function List

P.394

Search from the function list.

From Quick Manual

P.458

Quick Manual gives you a clear, brief description about basic functions. You can take it when you go out. Further, Quick Manual "For Overseas Use" is attached, so refer to it when you use the FOMA phone overseas.

Illustrations for keys

- In this manual, the illustrations for keys are simplified.
 - For the illustration for keys used in this manual, see "Phone Parts and Functions" on page 24.
- For the description of the operating procedures in this manual, see page 31.

Actual key	Illustration in this manual
1 শুক্র (Body color: Black/White)	
ি ভূক (Body color: Red)	
ি ভূট (Body color: Pink gold)	

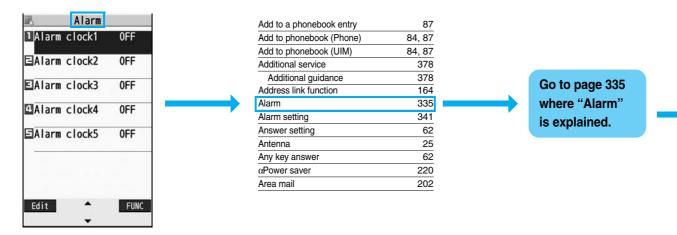
- Note that "FOMA P905i" is referred to as "FOMA phone" in this manual.
- The functions which use a microSD memory card are described in this manual; however, you need to obtain a microSD memory card separately to make these functions available. See page 293 for the microSD memory card.
- It is prohibited to copy all or part of this manual without permission.
- ●The instructions contained in this manual may be changed without notice.

How to search for "Alarm" is explained here as an example of search method.

From the Index



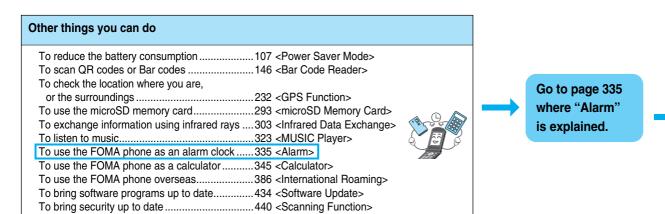
Search for a function or a service name as shown below.



From Easy Search

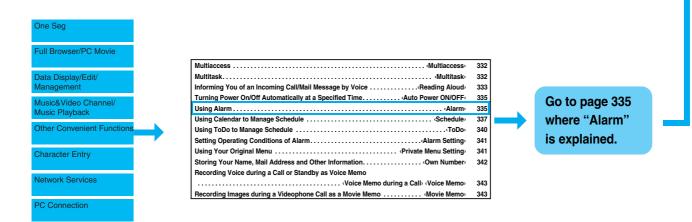


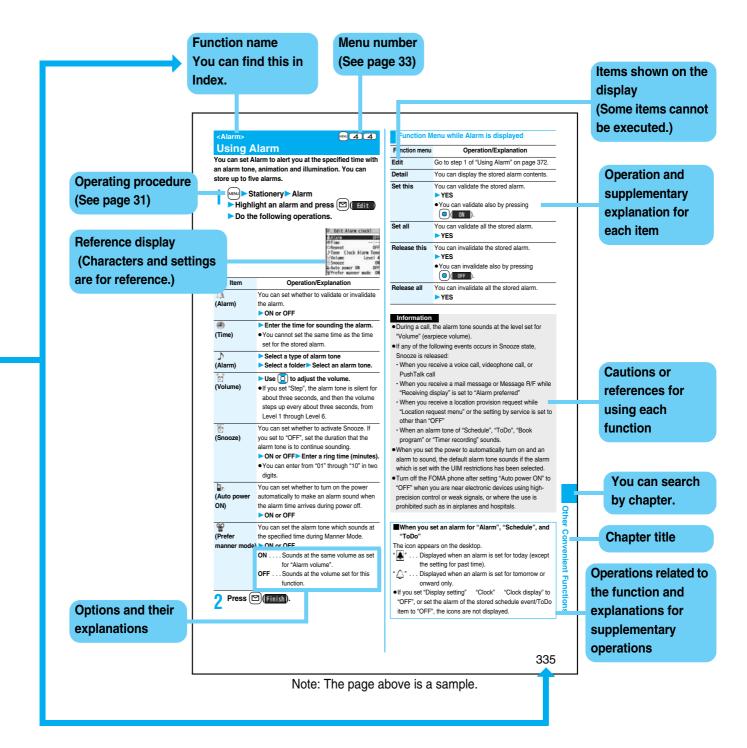
Search for the function you frequently use or that is convenient if you can know any as shown below.



From the Tabs on the Cover Cover page

Search for the function you want to set in the order of "Cover" "First page of Chapter" "Description page" as shown below.





Easy Search

To retrieve the operation for the desired function with simple words, refer to the following:

To know convenient functions for making calls

To/Not to notify your phone number to the other party ... 47 < Caller ID Notification >

To switch to a videophone call during a voice call... 52 <Switch to Videophone Call> ₹

To change a volume level of the other party's voice63 < Volume>

To put a call on hold during a call......64 < Holding>



To do the following when you cannot answer calls

To put an incoming call on hold before answering....64 <On Hold>

To convey the message that you need to

refrain from talking on the phone65 < Public Mode (Drive Mode)>

......66 < Public Mode (Power Off)>

To record voice/video messages......67 < Record Message Setting>



To change melody or illumination

To change ring tones according to callers......84 <Add to Phonebook>

To change ring tones.......98 <Select Ring Tone>

To know incoming calls by vibrator......100 < Vibrator>

To change colors/lighting patterns of Call

indicator for incoming calls......111 < Illumination>



To change/know display settings

To know the meaning of marks (icons) on the display

......28 < Display>

To change the menu display35 <Simple Menu>

To change the Stand-by display (Wallpaper) 104 < Display Setting>

To display a calendar on the Stand-by display..... 104 < Calendar>

To change the character size115 < Character Size >



To make full use of mail

To sort and save mail automatically 196 < Auto-sort>



To make full use of camera

To shoot with the photo light143 <photo light=""></photo>	
To change the shooting size143 < Image Size>	
To save to the microSD memory card144 <storage (stor<="" setting="" td=""><td>e In)></td></storage>	e In)>
To display shot images274 <picture viewer=""></picture>	



To use the FOMA phone with a sense of security

To lock the FOMA phone from away	
when it gets lost	120 <omakase lock="">^{※1}</omakase>
To keep Phonebook entries from prying ey	es 126 <secret mode=""></secret>
To reject calls without a caller ID	128 <call id="" setting="" without=""></call>
To reject calls from the phone numbers	
not in the Phonebook	129 <reject unknown=""></reject>
To separately store Phonebook and other	r
data files in preparation for their erasure	e129 <data security="" service="">^{**2}</data>



To make full use of One Seg

To watch One Seg	247 <activate 1seg=""></activate>
To record One Seg programs 252	<record video=""><record images="" still=""></record></record>
To book/To set timer recording for One	Seg programs
253	<book program=""><timer recording=""></timer></book>
To change settings of video and audio.	256 <user settings=""></user>



Other things you can do

To reduce the battery consumption107 <power mode="" saver=""> To scan QR codes or Bar codes146 <bar code="" reader=""></bar></power>
To check the location where you are,
or the surroundings232 <gps function=""></gps>
To use the microSD memory card293 <microsd card="" memory=""></microsd>
To exchange information using infrared rays 303 < Infrared Data Exchange>
To listen to music323 <music player=""></music>
To use the FOMA phone as an alarm clock 335 < Alarm>
To use the FOMA phone as a calculator345 < Calculator>
To use the FOMA phone overseas386 <international roaming=""></international>
To bring software programs up to date434 <software update=""></software>
To bring security up to date440 <scanning function=""></scanning>



^{%1} This is a pay service.

^{※2} This is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.

[•] The operating procedures for frequently used functions are summarized in Quick Manual. (See page 458)

Contents

How to Read/Refer to This Manual Easy Search	
Before Using the Handset	Phone Parts and Functions, Styles, Display, Method for Selecting Menu, Simple Menu, Guide, UIM (FOMA Card), Battery, Charging, Power ON/OFF, Select Language, Initial Setting, Set Time, World Time Watch, Caller ID Notification, Own Number, etc.
Voice/Videophone Calls 49	Making a Call/Videophone Call, Switching between a Voice Call and Videophone Call, Call Records, Chaku-moji, WORLD CALL, Hands-free, Receiving a Call/Videophone Call, Answer Setting, Volume, Ring Volume, Public Mode (Drive Mode), Public Mode (Power Off), Record Message Setting, Chara-den, etc.
PushTalk ⁷⁵	What is PushTalk?, Making a PushTalk Call, Add Member, Receiving a PushTalk Call, PushTalk Phonebook, Setting PushTalk Calling/Receiving, etc.
Phonebook 83	Available Phonebooks, Add to Phonebook (FOMA phone/UIM), Group Setting, Search Phonebook, No. of Phonebook, Two-touch Dial, Voice Dial, Data Security Service, etc.
Sound/Screen/Light Settings ⁹⁷	Select Ring Tone, Vibrator, Manner Mode, Display Setting, Private Window, Backlight, Color Theme Setting, Menu Icon Setting, Kisekae Tool, Feel Settings, Illumination, Desktop Icon, Font, Character Size, etc.
Security Settings	Passwords, Change Security Code, UIM Setting, Releasing PIN Lock, Lock All, Omakase Lock, Self Mode, Personal Data Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, Secret Mode, Mail Security, Restrictions, Call Setting without ID, Reject Unknown, etc.
Camera 131	Before Using Cameras, Still Image Shoot, Moving Image Shoot, Settings for Shooting Images, Setting Image Size/Image Quality, Bar Code Reader, Text Reader
i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel	What is i-mode?, B Menu, Last URL, My Menu, Change i-mode Password, Enter URL, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Download, i-mode Settings, SSL Certificate, Client Certificate, What is i-motion?, What is i-Channel?, etc.
Mail 171	i-mode Mail, Deco-mail, Template, Attachments, Photo-sending, Mail Auto-receive, Receive Option, Check New Message, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Auto-sort, Message R/F, Area Mail, Chat Mail, SMS, Web Mail, etc.
i-α ppli 209	What is i-αppli?, i-αppli Download, i-αppli Run, ☐ αppli Settings, Starting i-αppli Automatically, i-αppli Stand-by Display, ☐ αppli(microSD)
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa 223	What is Osaifu-Keitai?, What is iC Transfer Service?, Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-αppli, What is ToruCa?, Obtain ToruCa Files, ToruCa Viewer, ToruCa File List/Detailed ToruCa File Display, ToruCa Settings, IC Card Lock

GPS Function 231	About Using GPS Function, Position Location, GPS compatible i-oppli, Provide Location, Notify of Location, Location History, Service Settings, GPS Settings
One Seg 243	What is One Seg?, Before Using One Seg, Channel Setting, Activate 1Seg, Program Guide i-αppli, Data Broadcasting, TVlink, Recording One Seg, Book Program/Timer Recording, User Settings
Full Browser/PC Movie	Full Browser, Full Browser Settings, What is PC Movie?, Downloading PC Movies, PC Movie Player
Data Display/Edit/ Management ²⁷¹	Data Box, Picture Viewer, i-motion Player, Video Player, Chara-den, Melody Player, Kisekae Tool, microSD Memory Card, Managing Folders, Infrared Data Exchange, iC Communication, PDF Viewer, Document Viewer, AV Output, etc.
Music&Video Channel/ Music Playback ³¹⁵	What is Music&Video Channel?, Setting Programs, Playing Back/Operating Programs, Playing Back Music, Saving Music Files, MUSIC Player, Playlist
Other Convenient Functions 331	Multiaccess, Multitask, Reading Aloud, Alarm, Schedule, ToDo, Private Menu Setting, Own Number, Voice Memo, Movie Memo, Call Data, Calculator, Text Memo, UIM Operation, Bluetooth, Reset Settings, Initialize, etc.
Character Entry 355	Character Entry, Mode 1 (5-touch), Common Phrases, Cut/Copy/Paste, Own Dictionary, Learned Words, Download Dictionary, Mode 2 (2-touch), Mode 3 (NIKO-touch)
Network Services 363	Check New Messages, Voice Mail, Call Waiting, Call Forwarding, Nuisance Call Blocking, Caller ID Request, Dual Network, English Guidance, Service Numbers, Arrival Call Act, Remote Control, Multi Number, 2in1, OFFICEED, Additional Service
PC Connection 379	Available Data Communication, Before Using, Preparation Flow for Data Communication, AT Command, CD-ROM, DoCoMo Keitai Datalink
Overseas Use 385	Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING), Available Services, Confirmation for Using, Making a Call from the Country You Stay, Receiving a Call, Switch 3G/GSM, Network Search Mode, Operator Name Display, Set Roaming Guidance, Network Services, etc.
Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting 393	Function List, Options and Related Equipment, Troubleshooting, Error Messages, Warranty and Maintenance Services, i-mode Trouble Diagnosis Site, Software Update, Scanning Function, Specifications, Number of Savable/Storable/Protectable Items, SAR, Export Administration Regulations, etc.
Index/Quick Manual 449	Index, Quick Manual, Quick Manual "For Overseas Use"

Main Functions of FOMA P905i

FOMA (Freedom Of Mobile multimedia Access) is the name of the DoCoMo service based on the W-CDMA format, authorized as one of the world's standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

Remarkable i-mode!

i-mode is an online service that enables you to get useful information from i-mode menu sites (programs) or i-mode web pages. This service also enables you to send or receive mail messages with ease.

i-mode mail/Deco-mail/ Decomail-pictograph ►► P.172, P.175, P.272

Besides mail text, you can attach up to 2 Mbytes of files or 10 files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF, etc.) in total. The FOMA phone supports Deco-mail/Decomail-pictographs, so you can change the character color, character size, and background color of mail text, and insert images and moving pictographs.

Mega i-αppli/Intuitive Games ►► P.210

By downloading i-αppli programs from sites, you can enjoy playing games or have stock price information or weather forecasts updated automatically. As the large capacity mega i-αppli is supported, you can enjoy playing high-resolution 3D games and full-length role playing games.

In addition, the intuitive games are supported, which you can play by inclining or swinging your FOMA phone as you sense. As the voice recognition is supported by P905i, the operation responding to your voice is also available.

♦ High-Speed Area Supported ▶ ▶ P.380

FOMA High-Speed Area is supported so that high speed communication is available with download speed of up to 3.6 Mbps and upload speed of up to 384 kbps.

International Roaming ►► P.386

You can use your FOMA phone, phone number, and mail address overseas as they are. (Supported in GSM/3G area) Voice calls, videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS, and network services are available.

"しゃべって翻訳 for P (Speech Translation for P)", which translates spoken Japanese into English and spoken English into Japanese, is pre-installed.

◆GPS ▶▶ P.232

You can use the location information obtained by GPS to search for a map of your location and information of the surrounding area, notify of your location by attaching to mail, and navigate yourself to your destination. The pre-installed "地図アプリ (Map Application)" enables you to easily use the highly accurate map.

Chaku-uta Full®/Uta-hodai/ Music&Video Channel /Video Clips ▶▶P.168, P.316, P.321, P.323

This FOMA phone supports Chaku-uta Full[®] that enables you to download a whole music file and Uta-hodai that enables you to enjoy listening music as much as you like at a flat rate.

This FOMA phone also supports Music&Video Channel that, just by setting up beforehand, automatically downloads music programs in the night. You can watch programs containing moving images on your P905i. Further, this FOMA phone supports up to 10 Mbytes of i-motion movies, so it also supports Video Clip that enables you to enjoy a whole music clip file.

- "Chaku-uta Full" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.
- * This is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.

◆ Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa ▶ ▶ P.224, P.225

By downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppli, you can replenish electronic money from a site into the IC card in the FOMA phone and check your account for the balance and usage details. In addition, the "DCMX" i-oppli program that provides the DoCoMo credit service is pre-installed. Further, "iC transfer service" is supported so that you can easily move data from the existing IC card to a new one when you replace your FOMA phone such as at the time of phone model change.

ToruCa is an electronic card that you can obtain from scanning devices or sites and can easily exchange using mail or infrared data exchange.

Kisekae Tool ▶▶P.109, P.292

By downloading the displays of your cartoon characters from an i-mode site, you can change the Stand-by display or Menu display at a time.

You can change the order of displayed menus according to the frequency of use to customize the Menu display as you like

Bluetooth ▶▶P.348

The wirelessly-connected FOMA phone and a Bluetooth device enable you to talk or listen to music while you are carrying the FOMA phone in your bag.

Feel * Talk/Feel * Mail ▶▶ P.109

Animation of 45 characters and illumination reproduces the atmosphere of conversation or mail messages.

Wide VGA Display

You can display still or moving images in the wide VGA (480 dots x 854 dots) display of approx. 3.0 inches, and you can enjoy watching One Seg programs on the impressive display.

Also, the light sensor automatically adjusts the backlight in accordance with the ambient brightness, and the LCD Al compensate the image quality in accordance with the brightness.

Horizontal Open Style ▶▶ P.26

You can watch One Seg programs and videos in the wide horizontal display in Horizontal Open Style. Further, you can see the Internet web pages with Full Browser without scrolling sideways. Work with Style enables you to activate One Seg just by switching styles.

◆One-push Open ►►P.26

■One-push Answer ▶▶P.63

When a call comes in, just press the one-push open button, and you can open the FOMA phone to answer the call.

■Recv. Mail/Call at Open ▶▶P.106

When a missed call or new mail message is found, just press the one-push open button, and you can open the FOMA phone to display the detailed Missed Call display or the Inbox List.

Mail Blind ▶▶P.198

You can show the characters on the detailed mail display and Message Composition display in gray to make them hard to see from persons around you. (The characters on the Character Entry display are not shown in gray.)

Image Stabilizer ►► P.144

Owing to the Image Stabilizer function, you can shoot still images or moving images with less blur by the outside camera.

Document Viewer ▶▶P.310

On your FOMA phone, you can display Microsoft Word files, Microsoft Excel files, and Microsoft PowerPoint files created by personal computers.

♦ Security Settings ▶▶ P.117

Various settings such as the lock functions and security settings for "safety" are available.

■Omakase Lock ▶▶P.120

When you have lost the FOMA phone, you can lock the FOMA phone and release it by contacting DoCoMo.

For inquiries, see the back page of this manual.

Omakase Lock is a pay service*.

- *You are not charged if you apply for this service at the same time as applying for the suspension of the use or during the suspension.
- Note that Omakase Lock might be activated by an offer from the contractor of the FOMA phone when the contractor and the user of the FOMA phone differ.

■ Data Security Service ▶ ▶ P.129

This service enables you to save Phonebook entries, images, and mail messages from your FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center, and restore the saved data, when you lost your FOMA phone or in other cases, to your FOMA phone from the Data Storage Center. Further, you can edit or manage data held at the Data Storage Center using your personal computer and can reflect the edited data to your FOMA phone.

For details on Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]". For inquiries, see the back page of this manual. Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis.

Network ►► P.363

- Voice Mail Service (Charged)
 - A separate subscription is required.
- Dual Network Service (Charged)
- A separate subscription is required.
- •SMS (Free)
 - No subscription is required.
- Call Waiting Service (Charged)
 - · A separate subscription is required.
- Multi Number (Charged)
- · A separate subscription is required.
- Call Forwarding Service (Free)
- •A separate subscription is required.
- 2in1 (Charged)
- A separate subscription is required.

Making Full Use of FOMA P905i!

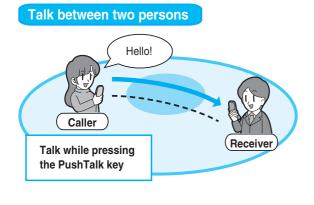
♦ Videophone ▶▶ P.50

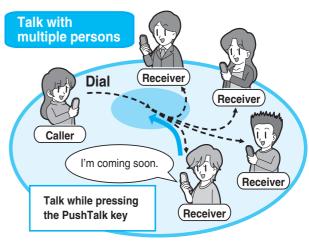
You can talk with a person who is away from you, seeing each other.

By the default setting, the voice of the other party is set to be output from the speakers, so you can start talking immediately. You can switch, without disconnecting, from an ordinary voice call to a videophone call.

PushTalk ▶▶P.76

You can communicate with multiple persons (up to five persons including yourself) just by selecting them from the PushTalk Phonebook and pressing the PushTalk key.



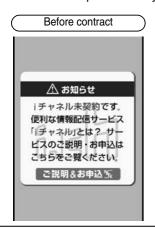


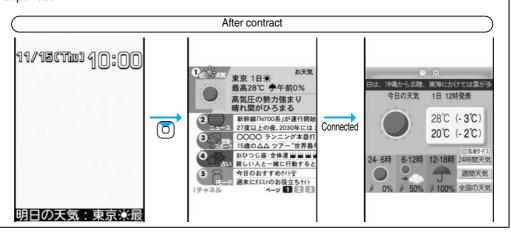
i-Channel ▶▶P.169

i-Channel distributes graphical information such as news or weather forecast.

By selecting a channel you want to see from the Channel List, you can obtain detailed expressive information created by Flash (see page 154).

- This is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.
- The service is provided only in Japanese.





One Seg ▶▶P.244

You can watch One Seg (terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service for mobile objects) programs. You can display captions and data broadcasting, record video or still images from a program being broadcasted. Moreover, you can book the One Seg programs you want to watch or set timer recording. While watching a One Seg program, you can compose i-mode mail messages or check the sent/received i-mode mail messages by using multiple windows as well.

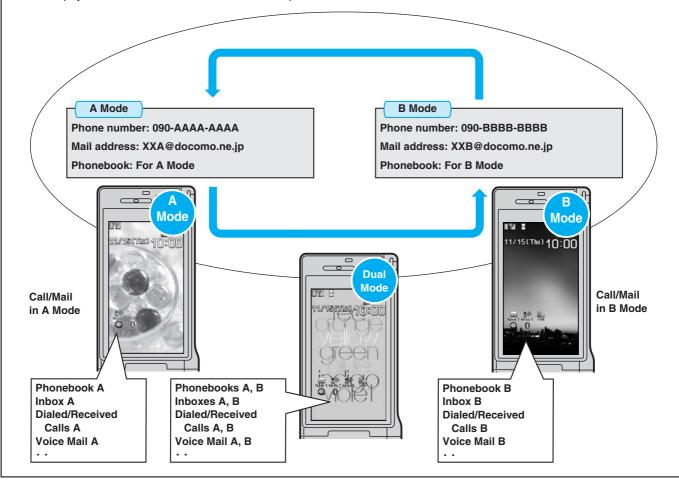




2in1 ▶▶ P.372

This service enables you to have two number/two mail addresses on your single FOMA phone and to use your FOMA phone as if you were using two sets, by using the dedicated mode function. You can sort Phonebook entries, mail boxes, dialed/received call records, and Stand-by displays into "A mode" and "B mode" to manage them separately. You can also use "Dual mode" to simultaneously manage both A and B modes.

• This is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.



MUSIC Player ▶▶ P.323

On a single player, you can play back and enjoy Chaku-uta Full[®] music files, Windows Media[®] Audio (WMA) files, and SD-Audio files.

You can download Chaku-uta Full[®] music files from sites and may be able to display their images and lyrics while playing them back.

In the case of SD-Audio or WMA files, you can obtain your favorite music files from music CDs or Internet web pages and save them on the microSD memory card by using your personal computer. You can save music files also by using the Napster® application program.



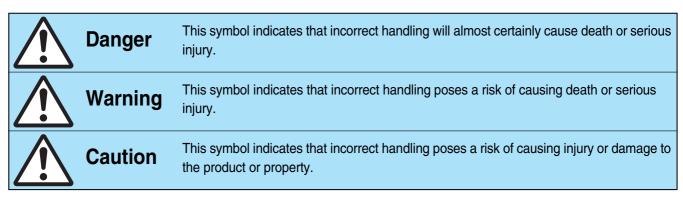
Chaku-moji ►►P.55

While calling up the other party, you can have your message displayed on his/her Call Receiving display. The receiving end can know your subject/feeling by reading the message before answering the call.

Safety Precautions

Always follow the safety precautions.

- ■Before using the FOMA phone, read these safety precautions carefully so that you can use it correctly. After reading the precautions, keep them in a safe place.
- ■Be sure to observe these safety precautions because they are designed to protect you or those around you from causing injury and to avoid unnecessary damage to the property.
- The symbols below indicate the levels of danger or damage that can be caused if the particular precautions are not observed.



■The following symbols show specific directions:



Denotes things not to do. (Prohibition)

Denotes not to touch with wet hands.



Denotes not to disassemble.

Do not

disassemble



Denotes not to use where it could get wet or not to wet it.





Denotes mandatory instructions (matters that must be complied with).



Denotes to pull the power plug out of the outlet.

power plug out

"Safety Precautions" are divided into the following six sections:

General precautions for FOMA phone, batteries, adapters/chargers, and UIM	P.13
Precautions for FOMA phone	P.13
Precautions for batteries	
Precautions for adapters/chargers	P.16
Precautions for UIM	
Notes on using near electronic medical equipment	P.17

General precautions for FOMA phone, batteries, adapters/chargers, and UIM



Danger



Do not use or leave the FOMA phone and its accessories in places with a high temperature such as near fire or places exposed to direct sunlight, or in cars under the blazing sun.

The devices could be deformed or malfunction, or the battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire, thus resulting in the deterioration of performance and shortening of the life of devices. Also, part of the case could get heated, causing bare skin burns.



Do not disassemble, modify or solder the FOMA phone or accessories.

Accidents such as fire, injury, or electric shock, or malfunction may result. The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Avoid

Water

disassemble

Do not wet the FOMA phone or accessories.

If liquids such as water or pet urine get onto them, overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury or others may result. Pay attention to the place of use and the way of handling.



Use only the batteries and adapters/chargers approved by DoCoMo for your FOMA phone.

If you use any type of battery, adapter or charger other than the specified one, your FOMA phone, battery or other accessories may leak, overheat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery Pack P15

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02

FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use

FOMA DC Adapter 01/02

Desktop Holder P24

FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01

FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

For other compatible products, contact a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop.



Warning



Do not place the batteries, the FOMA phone, adapters/chargers, or UIM in cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or high-pressure containers.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. The FOMA phone or the adapter/charger may overheat, smoke, or catch fire, or its circuit parts may become damaged.



Do not throw the FOMA phone or accessories, or subject them to severe shocks.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.



Be careful not to let electroconductive materials (metal pieces, pencil leads etc.) contact with the charging terminals or connector terminal. Also, make sure that those are not entered into the inside of the FOMA phone.

Short-circuit could cause fire or malfunction of the FOMA phone.



When you are in a place such as a gas station where flammable gas is generated, turn off the FOMA phone, and never do charging. Otherwise, catching fire may result.

Ensure that you use Osaifu-Keitai with the FOMA phone turned off when you are in the vicinity of the gas station. (When IC card Lock is set, turn off the power with the lock released.)



If odor, overheat, discoloration, or deformation is detected during use, battery charge, or storage, immediately observe the following:

- 1. Pull the power plug out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
- 2. Turn off the power to the FOMA phone.
- 3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA phone. If you use the FOMA phone and its accessories as they are, overheat, burst, or catching fire could result or the battery could leak.



Caution



Do not place the FOMA phone or accessories on unstable locations such as wobbly tables or slanted locations.

The FOMA phone or accessories may fall, resulting in injury or malfunction.



Do not store in humid or dusty places, or in high temperature environments.

Malfunction may result.



If children use the FOMA phone or accessories, a guardian should explain the safety precautions and correct operations. The guardian should also make sure that the instructions are followed during use.



Keep out of the reach of babies and infants.

Accidental swallowing or injury may result.

Otherwise, injury may result.



Do

Be especially careful when you use the FOMA phone for a long time with the adapter/charger connected. If you use i-αppli programs, talk on the videophone, watch One Seg and so on for a long time during charging, the temperature of the FOMA phone, battery pack, or adapter/charger might rise.

If you directly touch the part of high temperature continuously, redness, itching, or rash might be caused or low-temperture bare skin burns may result depending on your physical conditions or predisposition.

Precautions for FOMA phone



Warning



Don't

Do not directly point the infrared data port at someone's eyes during transmission.

His/her eyes may possibly be affected. Other infrared devices may operate erroneously if the infrared data port is pointed at them during transmission.



Do not shine the photo light close to eyes.

Doing so can damage eyesight. Also, accidents such as injury might occur if someone is startled or dazzled by the light.



Don't

Do not put the FOMA phone in the place where it could be affected by an expanded airbag, e.g., on the dashboard.

If the airbag expands, the FOMA phone could hit you and others, causing accidents such as injury and the FOMA phone could malfunction and become damaged.



If you have any implanted electronic medical equipment, do not place your FOMA phone in a chest pocket or inner pocket.

If the FOMA phone is positioned close to electronic medical equipment, it may cause that equipment to malfunction.



Do not allow liquids such as water, or foreign materials such as metal pieces or flammable materials to get into the UIM insertion slit or microSD memory card slot of the FOMA phone.

Fire, electric shock or malfunction may occur.



Do not light the photo light to drivers of a car, and others.

It disturb the driving, and accidents may result.



Turn off the FOMA phone in places where use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.

Otherwise, electronic devices and electronic medical appliances may be adversely affected. If the Auto Power ON function is set, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off.

For use inside medical facilities, make sure that you comply with their regulations.

You may be punished for using the FOMA phone in airplanes, which is prohibited by law.



When talking with the FOMA phone set to Hands-free, be sure to keep the FOMA phone away from your ear.

Further, when you play games or play back music with the earphone/ microphone connected, adjust the sound volume to moderate volume.

The excessive volume impairs your hearing. Further, accidents may result if it is difficult to hear surrounding sound.



For those with weak heart conditions, the vibrator and ring volume must be adjusted carefully.

Those functions may cause an effect on the heart.



If thunder starts to rumble while you are using the FOMA phone outdoors, house the antenna, turn off the power, and move to a safe place.

Otherwise, you could be struck by lightning or suffer an electric shock.



Do

Turn off the FOMA phone when near electronic devices using high-precision control or weak signals.

The FOMA phone may possibly cause these devices to malfunction.

※Electronic devices that may be affected: Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical electronic devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled devices.

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted defibrillator or any other electronic medical device, consult the manufacturer or retailer of the device for advice regarding possible effects from the radio waves.



If the display part or camera lens is broken, be careful about broken glasses or the exposed interior of the FOMA phone.

Plastic panels are used for the surfaces of the display part and camera lens so that glasses do not easily get scattered, however, pay attention not to erroneously touch the broken part or interior. Otherwise, your hands may hurt.



Caution



Do not swing the FOMA phone by its antenna or strap.

The FOMA phone may hit you or persons around you, and accidents such as injury or malfunction and damage may result.



Do not use in places crowded with people.

The antenna may hit against others, causing injury.



Don't

Do not use the FOMA phone with the damaged antenna.

If the damaged antenna comes in contact with your skin, injury such as a burn could be caused.



When using the motion tracking, ensure that you check around you for safety, securely take hold of your FOMA phone, and do not swing to an extent more than necessitated.

The motion tracking is the function to incline or swing the FOMA phone for operation. If you excessively swing your FOMA phone, it might happen that it hits against persons or objects, resulting in critical accidents or damage.



When a metallic strap is attached to your FOMA phone, be careful that it does not hit against persons or objects when using the motion tracking.

Accidents such as injury or malfunction and damage may result.



Do not place magnetic cards or similar objects near the FOMA phone or between phone parts.

Information on magnetic cards such as cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks may be deleted.



Don't

Do not bring magnetic substances close to your FOMA phone.

Strong magnetic items might result in erroneous operation.



If you erroneously break the display part and then crystal liquid get leaked, never take or suck the liquid to or into your mouth, or apply to skin.

If the crystal liquid get put into the eyes or mouth, immediately cleanse with pure water and then see your doctor.

When it adheres to your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it away with alcohol etc., and then cleanse with detergent.

Otherwise, the loss of eyesight or injury to your body may result.



Do not close your ears to the speakers while a ring tone sounds or playing back a melody by the FOMA phone.

Otherwise, your hearing could be impaired.



Do not open the FOMA phone by pressing the one-push open button near persons around you or your face.

The FOMA phone may hit you or persons around you, causing accidents and injuries.



Do not use the FOMA phone with the hook for Horizontal Open Style protruded.

Otherwise, injury may result.



Electronic devices in some types of cars can be affected by use of the FOMA phone.

For safety's sake, make sure not to use the FOMA phone inside such cars.



Itching, rash or eczema may be caused depending on your physical conditions or predisposition. If an abnormality occurs, stop using the FOMA phone immediately, and then seek medical attention.

Metals are used for the following parts:

Where it is used	Material	Finishing
Charging terminal	Phosphor bronze	Gold-plated finish with nickel-plated ground
Metal part of the One Seg antenna	Brass	Chrome-plated finish with nickel-plated ground
Hook for Horizontal Open Style	Stainless steel	Chrome-plated finish with nickel-plated ground
Command Navigation key	Polycarbonate	Steam pressed aluminum, Hard coat
"P905i" logo panel on the Private window side	ABS	Steam pressed tin, Hard coat
Metal part of the one-push open button	Aluminum	-



Be careful not to get your finger or a strap caught between the FOMA phone when you close or open it.

Accidents such as injury or damage may result.



When you watch a One Seg program, watch in a place bright enough taking a certain distance from the display.

Otherwise, your visual acuity could be reduced.

Precautions for batteries

■Check the description on the label of the battery pack for the type of battery.

Description	Туре
Li-ion	Lithium-ion battery



Danger



Do not let any metal object such as a wire come in contact the battery terminals. Also do not carry or store the battery together with any metal objects like a necklace.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Do not use excessive force to attach the battery to the FOMA phone even when you cannot attach it successfully. Also, check that the battery is the right way round when you attach it.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Do not throw the battery into fire.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Do not pierce it with nails, hit it with a hammer, or step on it.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

If the battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Flush your eyes with clean water and get medical attention immediately.

Otherwise, the loss of eyesight may result.



Warning



If charging is not completed at the end of the specified charging time, stop charging. Otherwise, the battery may leak, overheat, become damaged or catch fire.



Immediately stop using the FOMA phone and keep it away from fire if the battery leaks or emits an odor.

The leaked battery fluid may ignite, causing fire or burst.



When any abnormality due to external shock such as the deformation or scratches by dropping is found on the battery pack, immediately stop using it.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.



Be careful that your pets do not bite into the battery pack.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.



Caution



An exhausted battery should not be disposed of with other waste.

The battery may catch fire or damage the environment. After insulating the battery terminals with tape, take it to a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop or dispose of it in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.



Do not charge the wet battery.

The battery pack may overheat, catch fire, or burst.



If the battery fluid comes in contact with skin or clothes, immediately stop using, then rinse it out thoroughly with clean water.

Skin injury may result.

Precautions for adapters/chargers



Warning



Do not use a damaged adapter/charger cord or power cord.

Electric shock, overheating or fire may result.



Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in steamy places such as a bathroom.

Electric shock may occur.



The DC adapter is for use only in a negative (-) grounded vehicle. Do not use it in a positive (+) grounded vehicle.

Fire may result.



If it starts to thunder, do not touch the FOMA phone and adapter/charger.

You might be struck by lighting or suffer an electric shock



Never short-circuit the charging terminals when the adapter is plugged into the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, never touch the charging terminals with fingers or other bare skin.

Fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury may result.



Place the charger and desktop holder on a stable location during charging. Do not cover or wrap the charger and desktop holder in cloth or bedding.

The FOMA phone may drop off, or the charger and desktop holder may overheat, causing fire or malfunction.



hands

Do not touch the power cord of the adapter/charger, or power outlet with wet hands.

Electric shock may result.



Use the adapter/charger at the specified

If you use it at a wrong voltage, fire or malfunction may result. When using the FOMA phone overseas, use FOMA AC adapter available overseas.

AC adapter: 100 V AC DC adapter: 12/24 V DC

[For negative (-) grounded vehicles only] AC adapter available overseas: 100 V to 240 V AC

[Connect only to household AC outlet]



If a fuse of the DC adapter has blown, replace it with a specified fuse.

If you use an unspecified fuse, fire or malfunction may result. For the specified fuse, refer to each instruction



Keep the power plugs dust-free.

Otherwise, fire may result.



When plugging the AC adapter into the power outlet, firmly plug it in, taking care not to contact with metal straps or the

Otherwise, electric shock, short-circuit or fire may result.



When pulling the adapter/charger out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not forcibly pull the adapter/charger cable or power cable, instead take hold of the power plug and then pull.

If you pull the plug out by the cord, the cord may be damaged, which could result in electric shock or fire.



When the adapter/charger is not to be used for a long period of time, unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Otherwise, electric shock, fire, or malfunction may power plug result.



out

Pull the power plug out

If liquids such as water get in the charger, unplug the power cord immediately from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Otherwise, electric shock, smoke or fire may result.



Caution



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter/charger cord and power cord.

Electric shock or fire may result.



Before cleaning, pull the power plug out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Otherwise, electric shock may result.

Pull the power plug out

Precautions for UIM



Caution



Be careful not to touch the cut surface of the UIM (IC portion) when removing it. You may hurt your hand or fingers.

Do

Notes on using near electronic medical equipment

The description below meets "Guidelines on the Use of Radio-communication Equipment such as Cellular Telephones – Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan.



Warning



Comply with the following in hospitals or health care facilities:

- Do not carry the FOMA phone into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU) or coronary care units
- Turn off the FOMA phone in hospital wards.
- If there is any electronic medical equipment near you, turn off the FOMA phone even when in a location such as a lobby.
- Comply with any regulations of hospital and health care facilities instructing you not to use or carry in a mobile phone.
- If the Auto Power ON function is set, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off.



Turn off the FOMA phone in crowded areas such as inside trains during rush hour, as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be near you.

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.



If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, use the mobile phone 22 cm or more away from an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.



Patients using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators (outside medical establishments for treatment at home, etc.) should check the influence of radio waves upon the equipment by consulting its manufacturer.

Operation of electronic medical equipment can be affected by radio waves.

Notes on Handling

General notes

Do not wet the equipment.

The FOMA phone, battery, adapter/charger, and UIM are not waterproofed. Do not use them in environments, which are high in humidity such as in bathrooms, and do not allow them to get wet from rain. Furthermore, if carrying them against your body, they become moist due to perspiration and the internal parts may become corroded, causing malfunction. If the parts are found to have been damaged due to exposure to the liquids, any repairs will not be covered by warranty, or

repairs may not be possible. This may be repaired at a cost if repairs are possible.

- Use a dry soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses to clean the equipment.
- The screen of the FOMA phone sometimes has a special coating so that they are easier to see. If you rub it roughly with a dry cloth, it might be scratched. Take care of the way of handling, and use only a dry, soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses. If the screen is left with water drop or stain adhered, smear may be generated or the coating might peel
- Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene, detergent or other solvents for cleaning, otherwise the printing may be removed or discoloration may result.
- Occasionally clean the terminals of the equipment using a dry cotton swab.

If the terminals become soiled, the connection might deteriorate so that the power turns off or the battery does not charge fully. Wipe the terminals with a dry cloth or cotton swab.

■ Do not place the FOMA phone near an air conditioner outlets.

Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction.

Do not apply excessive force onto the FOMA phone and battery pack.

If you put the FOMA phone in a bag along with many other articles or sit with the FOMA phone in a clothes pocket, the LCD display, internal circuitry and the battery pack could be damaged or malfunction. Also, if your FOMA phone is left with an external device connected to the connector terminal or earphone/microphone terminal, the connector could be damaged, or malfunction.

- Carefully read each instruction manual attached to the FOMA phone, battery pack, adapter/charger, or desktop
- Do not rub or scratch the display part with metals. Doing so might cause damage to the part, resulting in trouble or malfunction.

Notes on handling the FOMA phone

- Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures. The FOMA phone should be used within a temperature range of 5°C to 35°C and a humidity range of 45% to 85%.
- The FOMA phone, if operated near landline phones, television sets, radios or other devices that are in use, may affect them. You should operate your FOMA phone as far away from such equipment as possible.

■ It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored in the FOMA phone and keep such notes in a safe place.

We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.

- Do not insert an external device to the connector terminal or earphone/microphone terminal at a slant when connecting, and do not pull it out when it is inserted.

 Malfunction or damage may result.
- Make sure that nothing, such as a strap, gets caught between the parts of the FOMA phone when you close it. Otherwise, malfunction or damage may result.
- The FOMA phone becomes warm during use or charging but this is not an abnormality. Use the FOMA phone as it is.
- Do not leave the camera in places exposed to direct sunlight.

Pixels may be discolored or burns may result.

■ Usually, use your FOMA phone with the caps to the Earphone/Microphone/AV output terminal and connector terminal mounted.

Dust or water might enter into the FOMA phone, causing malfunction.

■ Do not operate the FOMA phone with the rear cover left removed.

The battery pack might come out, or trouble or damage may result.

- Do not apply an excessively thick sticker onto the surfaces of the display, keys, or buttons.

 Damage may result.
- While you are using the microSD memory card, never take it off or turn the power to the FOMA phone off.

 Data may be erased or damage may result.

Notes on handling batteries

■ Batteries have a limited life.

Though it varies depending on the usage state, you are advised to replace the battery if its usable time is extremely short even when you fully charge it. Make sure that you buy the specified battery.

- Charge the battery in a place with an appropriate ambient temperature of 5°C to 35°C.
- Make sure that the battery is charged when you use the FOMA phone for the first time or have not used it for a long period of time.
- The usable time of the battery differs depending on the usage environment or its remaining life.
- Depending on how the battery pack is used, it might swell as its operating life becomes short, but this is not a problem.
- Store the batteries in a place out of direct sunlight.

 When you do not use the battery for a long time, remove the battery from the FOMA phone or adapter/charger with the battery power completely drained, and store it in the polyethylene bag used for wrapping.
- Do not leave and store the battery pack as is with no battery remained.

The performance and operating life of the battery might be lowered or shortened.

Notes on handling chargers/adapters

■ Charge the battery in a place with an appropriate ambient temperature of 5°C to 35°C.

- Charge the battery where:
 - There is very little humidity, vibration, and dust.
 - There are no landline phones, television sets or radios nearby.
- During charging, the adapter/charger may become warm. This is not an abnormality, so continue charging.
- Do not use the DC adapter for charging the battery when the car engine is not running.

 The car battery could go flat.
- When using the power outlet having the disengaging prevention mechanism, observe the instructions given in that instruction manual.
- Do not give a strong shock. Also, do not deform the charging terminals or terminal guide.

 Malfunction may result.

Notes on handling the UIM

- Never use more force than necessary when inserting/ removing the UIM.
- The UIM may become warm during use, but this is not a sign of a malfunction. Continue using it as it is.
- The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the UIM into some other types of IC card reader/writer.
- Always keep the IC portion clean.
- Use a dry soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses to clean the equipment.
- It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored on the UIM and keep such notes in a safe place.

We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.

- For the environmental protection, bring any unneeded UIMs to a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop.
- Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.
- Do not damage, carelessly touch, or short-circuit the IC.

Data might be lost or malfunction may result.

- Do not drop the UIM or subject it to strong impacts.

 Malfunction may result.
- Do not bend the UIM or place objects on it.

 Malfunction may result.
- Into the FOMA phone, do not insert the UIM with a label or sticker pasted.

Malfunction may result.

Notes on handling the camera

■ You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA phone to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Notes on using Bluetooth function

- FOMA phone supports the security function that meets the Bluetooth Specification for the security during connection using Bluetooth. However, the security may not be sufficient depending on the configuration. Take care of the security while making connection using Bluetooth.
- Even if any leak of data or information occurs while making connection using Bluetooth, we take no responsibility.
- With the FOMA phone, you can use the following; Headset, Hands-free, Audio, Dial-up Communication, Object Push, and Serial Port. Also, the Audio/Video remote-control might be available depending on the Audio. (Only with compatible Bluetooth devices)

Supported version

Bluetooth Specification Ver. 1.2 compliant *1

Supported profiles ² (Supported services)

HSP

Headset Profile

HFP

Hands-Free Profile

A2DP

Advanced Audio Distribution Profile

AVRCP

Audio Video Remote Control Profile

DUNP

Dial-up Networking Profile

OPP

Object Push Profile

SPP

Serial Port Profile

- ※1 The FOMA phone and all Bluetooth function-installed devices have ensured that they conform to the Bluetooth Specification according to the rules the Bluetooth SIG defines, and are all authenticated. However, operating methods might differ, or data might not be exchanged even when they are connected wirelessly, depending on the features or specifications of connecting devices.
- %2 Standardizes the connecting procedures of Bluetooth per feature of a device.

■ Radio frequencies

The radio frequencies the Bluetooth function of the FOMA phone uses are as follows:

2.4 FH 1	

- 2.4 : Indicates radio facilities that use 2400 MHz frequencies.
- FH : Indicates the modulation system is the FH-SS system.
- Indicates that a supposed coverage distance is 10 meters or less.

: Indicates that all radio frequencies 2400 MHz through 2483.5 MHz are used, and that the frequencies for mobile object identifiers shall not be avoided.

■Cautions on Using Bluetooth Devices

Bluetooth operates at radio frequencies assigned to the in-house radio stations for a mobile object identifier that have to be licensed and is used in production lines of a factory, specific unlicensed low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations (hereafter, referred to "another radio station") in addition to scientific, medical, or industrial devices such as microwave ovens.

- Before using this product, make sure that "another radio station" is not operating nearby.
- If radio interference between this product and "another radio station" occurs, move immediately to another place or stop radio transmission to avoid interference.
- 3. Contact the following for further details: DoCoMo Information Center:
 - 0120-005-250 (in English, toll free) 0120-800-000 (in Japanese, toll free)

*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

Notes on handling the FeliCa reader/writer

- The FeliCa reader/writer functions on the FOMA phone use very weak radio waves that are license free from radio stations.
- The FeliCa reader/writer is operated on the 13.56 MHz frequencies. When you use another reader/writer nearby, take enough distance between your FOMA phone and the reader/writer. Further ensure that there are no radio stations that are operated on the same frequencies.

Caution

■ Do not use the modified FOMA phone. Using a modified FOMA phone infringes the Radio Law.

The FOMA phones are granted technical regulations conformity certification as the specified radio equipment under the Radio Law and bear a "technical conformity mark "on the nameplate as evidence of conformity.

Unscrewing the FOMA phone and modifying internal components void the technical regulations conformity certification. Do not use the FOMA phone in this state, which infringes the Radio Law.

■ Be especially careful not to operate the FOMA phone during drive.

You are punished for making calls while driving with the FOMA phone in your hand. If this is considered to be of necessity, tell the caller handsfree that you will "redial", and then park your car in a safe place, and then redial.

■ Use the Bluetooth functions in Japan only.

The Bluetooth functions on the FOMA phone have been authorized in compliance with the radio transmission standards in Japan.

You might be imposed punishment if you use it overseas.

■ Use the FeliCa reader/writer functions in Japan only. The FeliCa reader/writer functions on the FOMA phone have been authorized in compliance with the radio transmission standards in Japan.

You might be imposed punishment if you use it overseas.

Intellectual Property Rights

Copyrights and Portrait Rights

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute the contents such as text, images, music, or software programs downloaded from web pages on the Internet, or images shot by the cameras of this product without permission from the copyright holder except for when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed by the copyright law. Note that it may be prohibited to shoot or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use. Make sure that you refrain from shooting portraits of other persons and distributing such portraits over the Internet without consent, as this violates portrait rights.

Trademarks

- "FOMA", "mova", "PushTalk", "PushTalkPlus", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "i-αppliDX", "i-motion", "Deco-mail", "Chaku-motion", "Chara-den", "ToruCa", "mopera", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "visualnet", "V-live", "i-Channel", "DCMX", "iD", "Security Scan", "i-shot", "i-motion mail", "i-area", "Short Mail", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "DoPa", "sigmarion", "musea", "IMCS", "OFFICEED", "2in1", "Chokkan Game", and the logos of "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "DCMX", "iC", "iD", "Music&Video Channel", "HIGH-SPEED" and "WORLD WING" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.



- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc., in the US and other countries.
- NAVIDIAL and NAVIDIAL logo mark are trademarks of NTT Communications Corporation.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, and Windows Vista® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Windows Media[®] is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Powered by JBlendTM Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
 JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.

- The microSD logo is a trademark.
- The microSDHC logo is a trademark.



- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- 使いかたナビ® is a registered trademark of CANNAC, Inc.
- "VIERA" is a registered trademark of Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., Ltd.
- Java and Java related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by NTT DoCoMo, Inc. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- Powered by Mascot Capsule[®]/Micro3D Edition[™]
 Mascot Capsule[®] is a trademark of HI CORPORATION.
- The image stabilization technology utilized is PhotoSolid[®], a product of Morpho, Inc.
 PhotoSolid[®] is the registered trademark of Morpho, Inc. in Japan and other countries.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- Other company names and product names described in the text are trademarks or registered trademarks of those companies.

Others

- This product contains NetFront Sync Client of ACCESS CO., LTD.
 Copyright © 2007 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
 ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- This product contains IrFront software of ACCESS CO., LTD.
 Copyright © 1996-2007 ACCESS CO., LTD.

 ACCESS and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- Contains Flash® Lite™ and Adobe® Reader® technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

 Flash Lite copyright © 1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved.

 Adobe Reader copyright © 1984-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

 Adobe, Flash, Flash Lite and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

 ADOBE® FLASH® ADOBE® FLASH® ENABLED

 Software LLC. All rights reserved.

 Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.

 Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,490,165	5,101,501
5,511,073	5,267,261	5,568,483
5,414,796	5,659,569	5,056,109
5,506,865	5,228,054	5,544,196
5,337,338	5,657,420	5,710,784
5 778 338		

All Right Reserved.

 This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

For more details, see "readme.txt" in the "GPL·LGPL等について" folder on the bundled CD-ROM. ("readme.txt" is only available in Japanese version.)

- Advanced Wnn V2 of OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. is used for conversion methods for Japanese language.
 "Advanced Wnn V2" © OMRON SOFTWARE Co., LTD. 1999-2007
- This product is loaded with Bluetooth® Stack for Embedded Systems Spec 1.2 developed by Toshiba Corp.
- This product contains "Sense", the voice analysis technology of Alegria Corporation for Feel * Talk.
- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 patent portfolio license for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to
 - (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Visual Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or
 - (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider.

No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. See http://www.mpegla.com.

- This product is licensed under the AVC patent portfolio license for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to
 - (i) encode video in compliance with the AVC Standard ("AVC Video") and/or
 - (ii) decode AVC Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide AVC Video.

No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. See http://www.mpegla.com.

- This product is licensed under the VC-1 patent portfolio license for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to
 - (i) encode video in compliance with the VC-1 Standard ("VC-1 Video") and/or
 - (ii) decode VC-1 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide VC-1 Video.

No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. See http://www.mpegla.com.

- Copyright 2001 Seiko Epson Corporation.
 All Rights Reserved. PRINT Image Matching is a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.
 The PRINT Image Matching logo is a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.
- PRINT Image Matching
- This product is manufactured or sold under license from InterDigital Technology Corporation.
- This product uses GestureTek's technology.
 Copyright © 2006, GestureTek, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- The abbreviations used for respective operating systems (Japanese version) in this manual are as shown below: Windows Vista is the abbreviation of Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, and Ultimate). Windows XP is the abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

Windows 2000 is the abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

- This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation and third parties. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary and third parties.
- This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary.
- Content providers are using the digital rights management technology for Windows Media contained in this device ("WM-DRM") to protect the integrity of their content ("Secure Content") so that their intellectual property, including copyright, in such content is not misappropriated. This device uses WM-DRM Software to play Secure Content ("WM-DRM Software"). If the security of the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content ("Secure Content Owners") may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software's right to acquire new licenses to copy, display and/or play Secure Content. Revocation does not alter the WM-DRM Software's ability to play unprotected content. A list of Revoked WM-DRM Software is sent to your device whenever you download a license for Secure Content from the Internet or from a PC. Microsoft may, in conjunction with such license, also download revocation lists onto your device on behalf of Secure Content Owners.

Accessories and Main Options

<Accessories>

● FOMA P905i Handset (With Warranty and Back Cover P22)



● FOMA P905i CD-ROM

The PDF versions of "Manual for PC connection setting" and "Kuten Code List" are included.



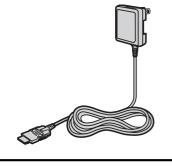
●Instruction Manual

Quick Manual included (See page 458)

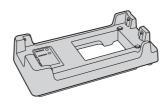


<Main Options>

●FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (With Warranty and Instruction Manual)



Desktop Holder P24 (With Instruction Manual)



Battery Pack P15 (With Instruction Manual)



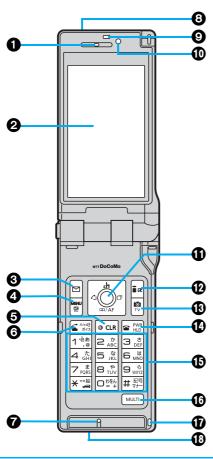
Other Options S

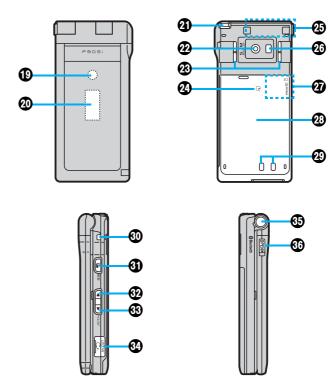
See page 421

Before Using the Handset

Phone Parts and Functions	24
Styles	26
Navigation Displays and Key Operations	27
Display	28
Displaying Description of Icons	s> 30
Private Window	30
Method for Selecting Menu	31
Using Simple Menu	35
When You do not Remember Key OperationGuide	e> 36
Using UIM (FOMA Card)	38
Attaching/Removing Batteries	41
Charging FOMA Phone	42
Checking Battery LevelBattery Leve	l> 44
Turning Power On/OffPower ON/OFF	÷ 44
Switching to English	e> 45
Executing Initial Settings	_J , 45
Setting Date and Time	e> 46
Displaying World TimeWorld Time Watch	ı> 47
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number	
Checking Your Own Number	
-	

Phone Parts and Functions

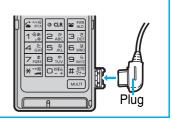




Design of keys is different by the handset body color.
 Illustrations above are for "Black"/"White" handset.

■For inserting or pulling the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option)

Take hold of the plug and insert or pull it straight into or out. Be careful not to take hold of the cover and plug together when you pull it out.



Earpiece

· For listening to the other party's voice

2Display

(See page 28)

❸ Mail key

- For showing the Mail menu (See page 187)
- For operating the function corresponding to the navigation displays (See page 27)

<Press and hold for at least one second>

· For checking new mail messages (See page 183)

Menu key/IC Card Lock key

- For showing the Main Menu (See page 31)
- For operating the function corresponding to the navigation displays (See page 27)

<Press and hold for at least one second>

· For locking the IC card (See page 230)

6 (CLR) Clear key

- For returning to the previous operation
- · For clearing entered text or a phone number

<Press and hold for at least one second>

• For resetting Main Menu (See page 109)

6 Send/Answer key, Hands-free key

- For making/receiving calls (See page 50 and page 60)
- For talking with Hands-free (See page 60)

<Press and hold for at least one second>

· For accessing a voice dial entry (See page 94)

Microphone

· For speaking to the other party

(3) Infrared data port

 Used for infrared data exchange and the infrared remote-controller. (See page 303 and page 306)

OLight sensor

For sensing brightness (See page 107)

1 Inside camera

- · For shooting photos of yourself (See page 133)
- · For catching sight of yourself during a videophone call

⚠ ○ Command Navigation key

· For operating functions and menus (See page 27)

⊕(**i** ¬ i-mode key/i-αppli key

- For showing the i-mode menu (See page 152)
- For operating the function corresponding to the navigation displays (See page 27)

<Press and hold for at least one second>

For showing the i-αppli Software List (See page 211)

(B) Camera key/One Seg key

- For activating a camera in "Photo mode" (See page 139)
- For switching the camera mode while a camera is activated (See page 143)
- For operating the function corresponding to the navigation displays (See page 27)

<Press and hold for at least one second>

· For starting One Seg (See page 247)

Power/End key

- For ending calls For ending respective functions
- For turning on the power (for at least one second)/For turning off the power (for at least two seconds) (See page 44)

Numeric keys

- · For entering phone numbers and text
- # (for at least one second)
 For activating Manner Mode (See page 102)
- (X)(for at least one second)
 For activating Public Mode (Drive Mode) (See page 65)
- 1 (for at least one second)

 For measuring your current location and executing the GPS function (See page 232)
- 5 (for at least one second)
 For switching the backlight on/off (See page 107)

16(MULTI) Multi key

• For showing the Multitask menu (See page 333)

<Press and hold for at least one second>

- For showing the display for setting "Switch 3G/GSM" (See page 390)
- For switching functions, when multiple functions are running (See page 333)

THook for Horizontal Open Style

(B)Connector terminal

 For connecting the AC adapter (option), DC adapter (option), or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option)

- Flickers for incoming calls/mail and during a call. (See page 111)
- · Lights in red during charging.

Private window

(See page 30)

One Seg antenna

· For receiving One Seg broadcasting (See page 245)

Outside camera

- For shooting portraits and/or landscapes (See page 133)
- For catching sight of persons and/or landscapes during a videophone call

Speakers

- · For sounding ring tone
- For listening to the other party's voice through this speaker when Hands-free is activated (See page 60)

FeliCa mark

- · The IC card is mounted.
- Use the IC card function placing this mark over the scanning device. You cannot dismount the IC card. (See page 225)

FOMA antenna

 The FOMA antenna is embedded in the FOMA phone. Do not cover the antenna with your hand for better communication.

Photo light

- · Flickers when you shoot with a camera.
- Used for shooting in a dark place. (See page 143)

microSD memory card slot

· For inserting microSD memory card (See page 293)

23Back cover

- Remove this when attaching/removing the battery pack, UIM, and microSD memory card. (See page 38, page 41 and page 293)
- Do not peel off the black sticker on the back of the back cover. If you peel it off, you might not be able to read and write the IC card.

Charging terminals

Strap hole

3 P PushTalk key

- For making/receiving PushTalk calls (See page 76 and page 78)
- For showing the PushTalk Phonebook (See page 79)

<Press and hold for at least one second>

· For activating "MUSIC Player" (See page 323)

⊕ Side upper key

· For scrolling up page by page

<Press and hold for at least one second with the FOMA phone opened>

· For activating 2in1 (See page 372)

❸ Side lower key

- · For scrolling down page by page
- For using Record Message (See page 68)
- For checking for missed calls and new mail (See page 112)

<Pre><Press and hold for at least one second with the FOMA phone closed>

• For activating Manner Mode (See page 102)

⊕Earphone/Microphone/AV output terminal

(See page 312 and page 346)

③One-push open button

(See page 26)

®Horizontal open lever

(See page 26)

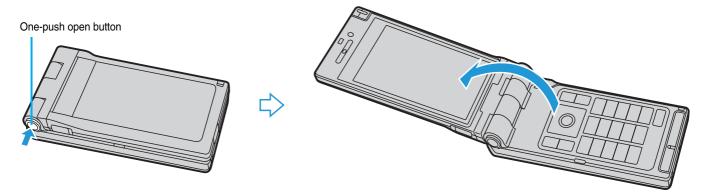
Styles

The P905i comes with two styles.

Normal Style

You can open the FOMA phone easily by one-push key operation. (One-push Open)

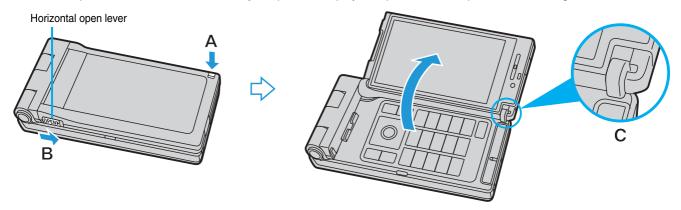
- You can open it also manually without using the button.
- You need to close the FOMA phone manually. If it does not close, open it fully and then close it.



Horizontal Open Style

Hold down the part A and open the display part with the horizontal open lever slid into the direction B. You can watch One Seg programs and use Full Browser in a wide horizontal display.

- You can use most functions in Horizontal Open Style even if they are not shown in a wide horizontal display.
- If the FOMA phone is not in state of C when you open the display, re-open the FOMA phone after closing it once.



Information

- When you open the FOMA phone by pressing the one-push open button, it might not open fully depending on its direction.
- When you open the FOMA phone by pressing the one-push open button, be careful not to drop it by its rebound.
- When you press the one-push open button in Horizontal Open Style, the FOMA phone will open in Normal Style after it is closed.
- Before switching the styles, be sure to completely close the FOMA phone. If you operate the horizontal open lever in Normal Style or with the display part unlatched, malfunction or damage may result.

Work with Style

When you open the FOMA phone in Horizontal Open Style, a One Seg program automatically starts in synchronization with the style.

Settings Other settings Work with style 1Seg or OFF

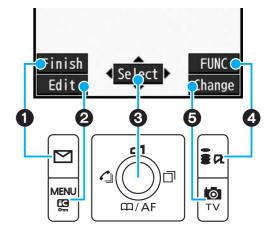
• Even when "1Seg" is set, the One Seg program does not start if a display other than the Stand-by display is shown.

Navigation Displays and Key Operations

When you want to execute an operation on the display, press the corresponding key as below.

■Basic display examples and key assignments

0	Indicates the operation you can perform with the \bowtie key.	Finish
0	Indicates the operation you can perform with the key.	Edit Store
8	Indicates the operation you can perform with the key.	Select Set
8	Indicates the direction in which you can scroll and select items with the key.	+ • •
4	Indicates the operation you can perform with the key.	FUNC Set
6	Indicates the operation you can perform with the 🔯 key.	Change Detail



Operating Command Navigation key

Up 🔼

• Moves the cursor or highlighted display up. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)

- Scrolls the display while a site or mail text is displayed.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Channel List. (See page 170)
- Converts entered characters to katakana, kanji or other characters. (See page 357)

Left/Received Calls

- · Moves the cursor to the left.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Received Call List. Press and hold for at least one second to bring up the Received Address List. (See page 54 and page 195)
- Scrolls back page by page.
 (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Returns to the previous page while displaying a site.

Right/Redial

- · Moves the cursor to the right.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Redial List. Press and hold for at least one second to bring up the Sent Address List. (See page 53 and page 195)
- Scrolls forward page by page. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- · Moves to the next page while displaying a site.



™/AF

OK key (

· Fixes the operation.

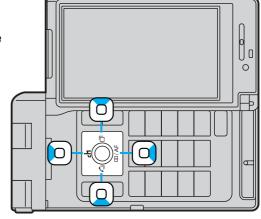
- Moves the cursor or highlighted display down.
 (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Scrolls the display while a site or mail text is displayed.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Search Phonebook display. Press and hold for at least one second to store a Phonebook entry. (See page 84 and page 89)
- Converts entered characters to kanji, katakana or other characters. (See page 357)

■Key operations in Horizontal Open Style

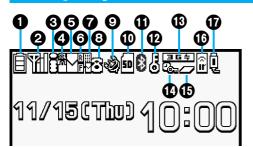
You can operate the keys in the same way as in Normal Style while the vertical display is shown.

While the horizontal display is shown, the Navigation icons do not appear and the key operation might differ depending on the function.

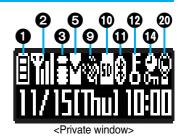
In this manual, the Command Navigation keys ((() () () () for the horizontal display are described corresponding to the horizontal display.



Display







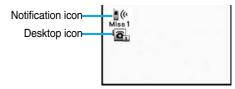
-	
	Battery level (estimate) (See page 44)
	Radio waves reception level (estimate) Strong Weak
	You are out of the FOMA service area or radio waves do not reach.
self	During Self Mode (See page 121)
8	
3	During i-mode (See page 152)
∌	During i-mode communication (See page 152)
<u> </u>	During packet communication (The icon differs depending on the communication status.)
P	During PushTalk communication (See page 76)
(You get out of the service area while Network Search Mode is set to "Manual". (See page 390)
4	
4 5 5	During SSL communication (See page 153)
<u> </u>	
(white)	Unread i-mode mail or an SMS message exists. (See page 182 and page 207)
(black)	The area for i-mode mail and SMS messages in the FOMA phone is full. (See page 182 and page 207)
	The area for SMS messages on the UIM (FOMA card) is full.
(white)	Unread mail exists, and the area for SMS messages on the UIM (FOMA card) is full.
(black)	Both the FOMA phone and UIM (FOMA card) are full.
(II)	Area mail exists. (See page 202)
6	
RF (white)	Unread Messages R/F exist. (See page 200)
R F (black)	The area for Messages R/F in the FOMA phone is full. (See page 200)
9	
(white)	i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center. (See page 183)
(black)	The box for i-mode mail at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 182)
₩ (white)	Messages R/F are held at the i-mode Center. (See page 200)
(black)	The box for Messages R/F at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 200)

	i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center while Receive Option Setting is set to "ON". (See page 202)	
8		
<u> </u>	During a voice call	
E	During a videophone call (64K)	
C II	During a videophone call (32K)	
	During 64K data communication	
9		
4	During measuring the current location (See page 232)	
嚴	Location Request Menu is set to "ON" or "Permission schedule", and it is within the validity period. (See page 240)	
	Location Request Menu is set to "Permission schedule" and it is out of the validity period. (See page 240)	
•		
5D	A microSD memory card is inserted. (See page 294)	
=	Data is being read to/written from the microSD memory card.	
50	A write-protected microSD memory card is inserted. (See page 294)	
50	The inserted microSD memory card cannot be used. (See page 294)	
Ę	A microSD memory card is inserted, and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option) is connected in microSD Mode. (See page 300)	
Ę	A microSD memory card is inserted, and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option) is connected in MTP Mode. (See page 300)	
•		
🐉 (blue)	A Bluetooth device is connected. (See page 350 and page 351)	
(black)	A Bluetooth device is connected and power consumption is low. (See page 350)	
@		
•	During Lock All (See page 120)	
	During Personal Data Lock (See page 121)	
D Ga	During Keypad Dial Lock (See page 125)	
5	During Secret Mode or Secret Data Only (See page 126)	

EG © 1	During IC Card Lock (See page 230)
©# ©#	Both Keypad Dial Lock and Personal Data Lock are set.
### B	Both Keypad Dial Lock and Secret Mode/ Secret Data Only are set.
# C	Both IC Card Lock and Lock All are set.
10 20	Both IC Card Lock and Personal Data Lock are set.
□.C ⊙π	Both IC Card Lock and Keypad Dial Lock are set.
	Both IC Card Lock and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are set.
# iC	IC Card Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, and Personal Data Lock are simultaneously set.
911 971	IC Card Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are simultaneously set.
18	
3G \$ 3G / GSM GPRS	Type of in-use network (See page 387)
OFFICEED	You are in the OFFICEED area. (See page 378)
•	
€	Timer Lock At Close is set. (See page 122)
(D : M !!! (0 000)
_	During Multitask (See page 332)
<i>3</i>	Multiple functions are activated.
	(See page 332)
	(See page 332) During watching a One Seg program (See page 247)
₽	During watching a One Seg program (See
	During watching a One Seg program (See page 247)
2) 1)	During watching a One Seg program (See page 247) During music playback (See page 324)
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	During watching a One Seg program (See page 247) During music playback (See page 324)
© 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	During watching a One Seg program (See page 247) During music playback (See page 324) During music pause (See page 324) During infrared data exchange (See page 303 and page 306)
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	During watching a One Seg program (See page 247) During music playback (See page 324) During music pause (See page 324) During infrared data exchange (See page 303)
© 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	During watching a One Seg program (See page 247) During music playback (See page 324) During music pause (See page 324) During infrared data exchange (See page 303 and page 306) The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option) is connected in Communication
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	During watching a One Seg program (See page 247) During music playback (See page 324) During music pause (See page 324) During infrared data exchange (See page 303 and page 306) The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option) is connected in Communication Mode. The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option) is connected in microSD Mode.

	A USB Hands-free compatible device is connected in microSD Mode. (See page 60)
1 B	
⊕	Vibrator is set. (See page 100)
S> S≈ S₹	Ring Volume is set to "Silent" or Mail/Msg. Ring Time is set to "OFF". (See page 64 and page 101)
20	
♥	During Manner Mode (See page 102)
	Remote Monitoring is set to "ON". (See page 73)
<u> </u>	
<u>⊕</u>	During Public Mode (Drive Mode) (See page 65)
<u> </u>	
¥	The call cost has exceeded the specified limit. (See page 344)
8	
↓	An alarm is set. (See page 255 and page 336)
	A Music OVides Observations are property
	A Music&Video Channel program is booked. (See page 316)
2 5	
9	Backlight is set to "OFF". (See page 107)
2 5	
	Side Keys Guard is set to "ON". (See page 125)
②	
	USB Mode Setting is set to "microSD mode". (See page 300)
MTP	USB Mode Setting is set to "MTP mode". (See page 300)
2 3	•
	Voice mail messages for Number B are held at the Voice Mail Center in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 377)
29	
鹏~ 廳· 略	Voice mail messages are held at the Voice Mail Center. (See page 364)
0	
#~# -	The number of record messages (See page 67)
③	
₫~₫	The number of videophone record messages (See page 67)

- For the horizontal display, icons from 1 through 1 appear at the lower left of the display.
- The clock at the upper right of the display (at the lower center of the horizontal display) does not appear when icon (f) or (f) is displayed.
- When the Stand-by display is shown, the notification icon or desktop icon appears. (See page 112)



Information

- Some characters and symbols on the display and Private window might be modified or abbreviated. In addition, the Private window is displayed in monochrome.
- The color liquid crystal display uses high-precision production technology. The slightest change in the environment or other factors may result in unlit or permanently lit pixels, but this is not a manufacturing defect.
- The color display is shown in black and white in this manual, so the color tone of the actual display looks different.

<lcons>



Displaying Description of Icons

The symbols at the top of the display (such as $\sqrt[6]{}$, $\boxed{}$, and $\boxed{}$) are called icons. You can check the meanings of the selected icons on the display.

Settings Display Icons Use ☐ to highlight an icon.

Private Window

Various information is displayed on the Private window like the following examples:

Press |▲|/|▼| or |₽ with the FOMA phone closed to display information on the Private window for about 15 seconds.









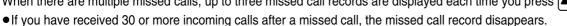


When a missed call is found

When the FOMA phone is closed, "Missed call" appears.

Press |▲| to display the missed call record. The name is displayed for the missed call coming from the party stored in the Phonebook.

When there are multiple missed calls, up to three missed call records are displayed each time you press



- Missed call records might not be displayed while another function is activated.
- After you display a missed call record, "Missed call" disappears.

■When a new mail message or Message R/F is received

When the FOMA phone is closed, a Feel * Mail image is played back, and then "New mail" appears.

When you press |▲|, the latest Feel * Mail image is played back. (For Messages R/F, the Feel * Mail image is not played back.)

When "Mail" on page 106 is set to "ON", the received date/time, sender's address (name), and subject of the mail or the received date/time and subject of the Message R/F are displayed. The sender's name is displayed for the mail coming from the party stored in the Phonebook. When multiple mail messages or Messages R/F are received, up to three mail messages or Messages R/F appear each time you press |▲| with "New mail" displayed.

- Press ▲ to end the playback of the Feel * Mail image or to clear the received date/time, and others.
- For the mail message and Message R/F to the box or folders with security set, Feel * Mail images, the received date/time, and others are not played back/displayed.
- When a mail message or Message R/F comes in while "Receiving display" is set to "Operation preferred" and a display other than the Stand-by display is shown, "New mail" appears without showing any information.
- Depending on the setting for "Auto-display", "New mail" appears when a Message R/F is received but information is not displayed.
- After you display the received date/time and others of the received mail or Message R/F, "New mail" disappears.
- When a mail message or Message R/F comes in during a voice call or a videophone call, information is not displayed even when "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred".
- When you set "Secret mail display" to "OFF" and you receive a secret mail message in Normal Mode, a Feel * Mail image is not played back.





■When i-Channel is received

When "i-Channel ticker" on page 106 is set to "ON" and the FOMA phone is closed, tickers flow on the Private window.



Press ▲/▼ or ℙ to end the tickers' flow.

Change Clock Display

You can change displayed contents by pressing [A] while clock is shown.





Method for Selecting Menu

Press (MENU) of the FOMA phone to bring up Main Menu so that you can execute, set, or check respective functions.

- Some functions can be selected also by the operation other than pressing (MENU). In this manual, the operation by the easier way is described.
- You can also switch to Simple Menu focusing on only basic functions for easy operation. (See page 35)
- This FOMA phone supports Kisekae Tool (see page 109). If you use Kisekae Tool to change the design of the Menu display, some menu configurations change according to the usage frequency depending on the type of the menu. Further, some menu numbers that are assigned to the menu items do not apply.

In that case, you cannot operate as described in this manual, so you are advised to show Normal Main Menu by "Disp. default MENU" (see page 109), or reset Main Menu by "Reset menu screen" (see page 109).

When you set "Menu icon setting" to "ドコモダケ_P905i (DoCoMo-dake_P905i)" of Kisekae Tool, you can restore to normal menu structure temporarily by selecting "基本メニュー呼び出し (Display normal menu)" from main menu item.

Scroll Selection

Main Menu is composed of 12 main menu icons indicating each function.

- If you select a main menu icon, the Sub-menu Item Selection display appears. If you further select a sub-menu item, the Lower Sub-menu Item Selection display appears.
- By repeating selecting, you can set and check the function.

■ Menu Number Selection

You can display some functions by pressing (MENU) + the menu number (See page 394).

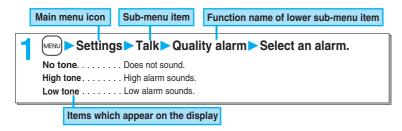
■ Multitask is Supported

You can simultaneously use some functions in the Main Menu. (See page 332)

Scroll Selection

In this manual, the description of the command navigation key operation (selection of top/bottom/left/right, and press of after selecting/entering a function item) is omitted. Scroll selection is explained below using the example of selecting the function "Quality alarm":

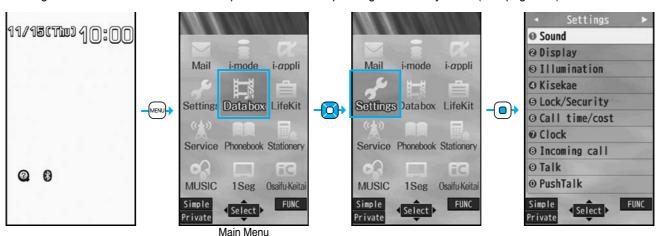
Description Example of Steps





Select a main menu icon from the menu function

Select "Settings" from Main Menu. Main Menu at purchase differs depending on the body color. (See page 397)

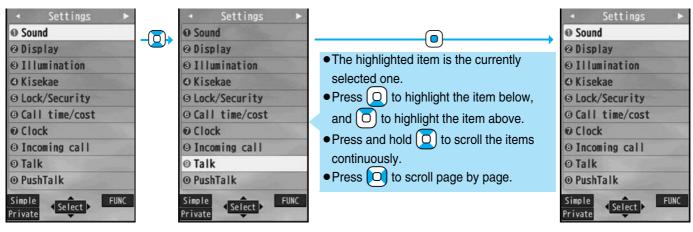


- Press to highlight the icon. Press and hold to scroll the icons continuously.
- If you have not touched any keys for at least 15 seconds, the Stand-by display returns.

STEP

Select a sub-menu item from the menu function

Select "Talk" from "Settings".

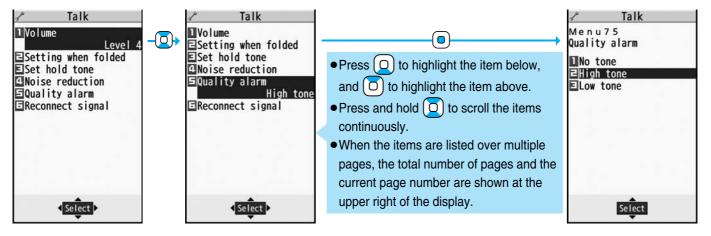


STEP



Select a desired lower sub-menu item (function)

Select "Quality alarm" from "Talk".

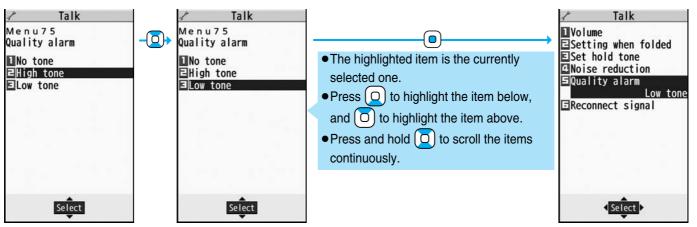




Set or check the function

Some menu items have even more detailed menus.

The example below shows how to set "Low tone" for "Quality alarm".



Menu Number Selection

Menu Number Selection is explained below using the following example:

Description Example of Menu Number



STEP



Bring up the function using the menu number

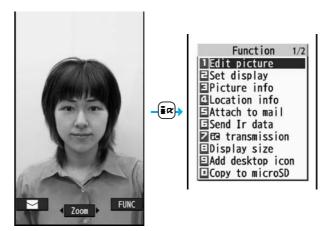
From the Stand-by display, press (MENU) 75.



Function Menu

If you press when "FUNC" appears at the lower right of the display, the Function menu including selectable items such as "Save", "Edit" or "Delete" in each operation appear on the display. The contents of the Function menu depend on the display from which you bring up the Function menu.

• When the items are listed over multiple pages, the total number of pages and the current page number are shown at the upper right of the Function Menu display.

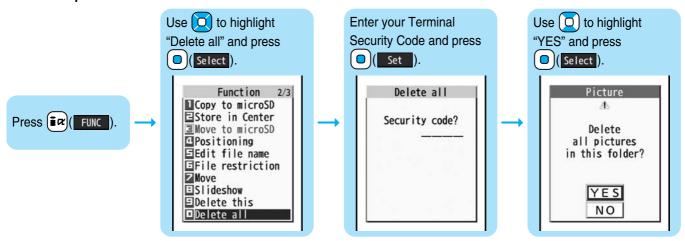


Description Example for Function Menu

In this manual, the operation of the Function menu is described as follows:

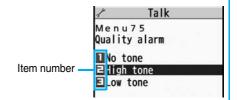


An actual operation is done as follows:



■To select items quickly <Direct selection>

Press the numeric key corresponding to the displayed item number.



Item scroll

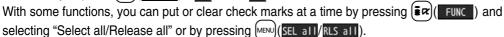
When menu items are listed over multiple pages, you can show the previous/next page by pressing with the uppermost/lowermost item highlighted. You can press to scroll through page by page. When Page / Page is displayed on the display, you can scroll through page by page also by pressing | Page |

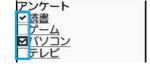
For such as lower sub-menu items, depending on the display being shown, you might be able to scroll through page by page also by pressing ▲▼ instead of ○.

■Check box

With the functions you can select multiple items, put a check mark for check boxes to select them.

Each time you press (□)(Select), "□" and "☑" switches.





• " " is placed to the selected item depending on the function.

■ After finishing the operation

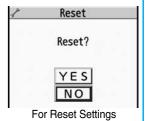
The Lower Sub-menu Item Selection display is shown. When you press (a), the Stand-by display returns (except during Multitask). The Stand-by display or the former display automatically returns depending on the function.

■To cancel the operation midway

Press . The contents of the setting are abandoned and the Stand-by display or the former display returns. The confirmation display appears asking whether to abandon the setting contents depending on the function. You can press CLR to return to the previous operation.

■When the "YES/NO" selection display appears

Press to highlight "YES" or "NO", then press (Select).



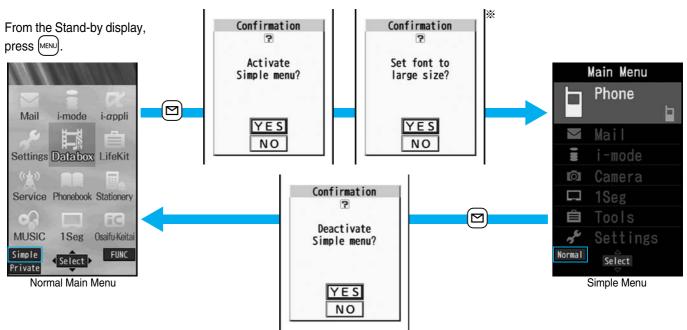
Using Simple Menu

Simple Menu is a menu focusing on only basic functions for easy operation.

- This manual describes the operating procedures in Normal Main Menu only. For how to operate in Simple Menu, see the respective pages of each function.
- You cannot use the Multitask function. (See page 332)

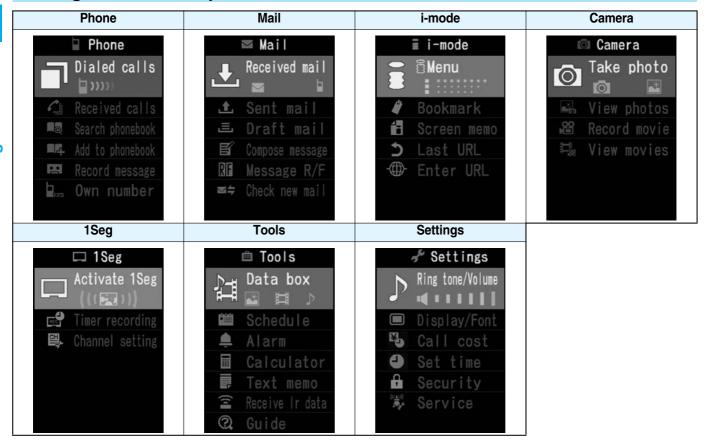
Switch to Simple Menu

You can switch between Normal Main Menu and Simple Menu.



**Select "YES" to set every item of "Character size" on page 115 to "Large". Even when you release Simple Menu, either of the settings does not return. When "Large" has already been set, the confirmation display does not appear.

Configuration of Simple Menu



<Guide>

When You do not Remember Key Operation

You can search for the functions you want to know and use, and then check the operating methods. You can execute some functions from "使いかたナビ (Guide)". This function is available in Japanese Mode only.

м҃ӹ҇▶ステーショナリー (Stationery)▶使いかたナビ (Guide)▶Select an item.

基本の操作 (Basic operations).. Displays the basic functions. Go to step 4.

おすすめ機能 (Recommendable functions)

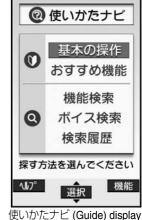
..... Displays the recommendable functions. Go to step 4.

機能検索 (Function search) Searches for a function.

ボイス検索 (Search by voice)... Searches by vocalizing a keyword. Go to step 2 on page 37.

検索履歴 (Search history)...... Displays up to 30 search histories. Go to step 4.

- ◆Highlight each item and press (□)(¹√1/2°); then the detailed operating methods are displayed.
- ●The 使いかたナビ (Guide) display appears also by selecting the 使いかたナビ (Guide) icon note in the desktop at purchase.



Select a search method if you select "機能検索 (Function search)" in step 1.

文字入力キーワード検索 (From your words)... Enter a keyword and retrieve.

preceding or following row by pressing . Go to step 4.

機能一覧検索 (From Function List) Retrieves from the function list. Go to step 4.

 ◆Highlight each item and press (□)(¹√√²); then the detailed operating methods are displayed. If you highlight "文字入力キーワード検索 (From your words)" and press (☑)(【417℃), select "文字入力キーワード検索 (From your words)" or "文字入力のしかた (How to input words)".

Enter a keyword.

Up to 50 search results are displayed.

• You can enter up to 24 full-pitch/48 half-pitch characters.

✓ Select a function Select an item.

機能の説明 (Description) Displays explanations for the function.

操作のしかた (How to operate) Displays the operating method.

この機能を使う (Operate function) . . . Executes the function. Operate each function.

関連機能 (Relevant function).......Displays up to 10 relevant functions. Repeat step 4.

- For some functions, press ()(選択) several times for selection.
- ●If you select "基本の操作 (Basic operations)" in step 1, the description about the function is displayed when that function is selected. Press (☑)(実行) to execute the function.
- You can display explanations about the function also by pressing (図)(説明) while highlighting the function.
- ●To delete search history, press (臺灣)(圖機能) and select "1件削除 (Delete this)" or "全削除 (Delete all)", then select "YES".

Search by Voice

You can search for a function by vocalizing a keyword. Set "Search by voice" of "Read aloud settings" to "ON" to hear voice guidance for operations.

<mark>1</mark> 使いかたナビ (Guide) display▶ボイス検索 (Search by voice)

●You can display the detailed operating methods by pressing ☑(ᠬ) and selecting "ボイス検索 (Search by voice)" or "音声入力のしかた (How to input voice)".

Yocalize a keyword when the voice recognition start tone sounds.

Start vocalizing the keyword within seven seconds after the voice recognition start tone sounds. Up to nine detected results are displayed.

- You cannot change the sound volume of the voice recognition start tone. It does not sound during Manner Mode.
- •The keywords you can input by voice are limited to the ones that have been pre-installed to the FOMA phone. If the vocalized keyword is not recognized easily, vocalize a different word.
- See page 94 for voice input.

Select a detected result Select an item.

このキーワードで検索 (Search from this) . . . Retrieves with the keyword you have selected. Up to 50 searched results are displayed. Go to step 4 on page 37.

キーワードの追加 (Add keywords) Add a new keyword. Repeat step 2 and step 3.

Using UIM (FOMA Card)

The UIM is an IC card that holds your information such as phone numbers. It can hold data such as Phonebook entries and SMS messages as well. By sharing a UIM, you can operate multiple FOMA phones for multiple purposes.

You cannot use the FOMA phone for communication such as voice and videophone calls, i-mode, sending/receiving mail, or packet communication unless the UIM is inserted.

For details on how to use the UIM, refer to the UIM instruction manual.

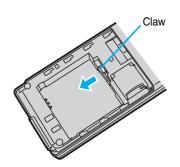
When inserting or removing the UIM, take care not to accidentally touch or scratch the IC.

Insert/Remove UIM

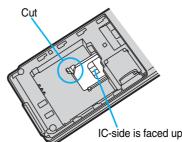
You need to turn off the power and then remove the battery before you insert the UIM. (See page 41)

Inserting

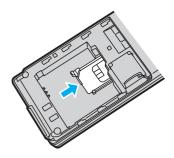
- Pull the claw to pull the tray out.
 - Pull out the tray straight until it clicks.



- Place the UIM on the tray with its IC-side facing up.
 - Fit the cut corner of the UIM and tray in place.

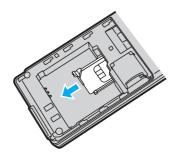


- **?** Push the tray inwards.
 - Push the tray inwards firmly until it is fixed.



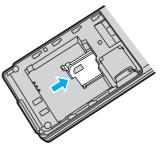
■ Removing

Follow step 1 of "Inserting" to pull out the tray and remove the UIM.



If the tray is disengaged Fit and push it straight

Fit and push it straight into the guide rail.



Information

- Make sure that you insert/remove the UIM with the FOMA phone closed and held in your hand.
- Take care not to force the UIM into place because this can break it. And take care not to force the tray into place because it can brake the tray and the guide rail.
- Take care not to lose the UIM once you remove it.
- When you replace your UIM (except during Omakase Lock), you need to enter the four- to eight-digit Terminal Security Code after turning on the power. When you enter the correct Terminal Security Code, the Stand-by display appears. If you enter the incorrect Terminal Security Code five times in succession, the power turns off. (However, you can turn on the power again.)

About Password of UIM

You can set two passwords, PIN1 and PIN2, for a UIM. (See page 118)

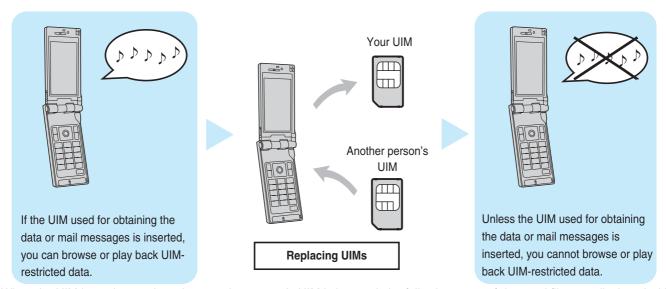
UIM Restrictions

The FOMA phone has the UIM restriction function as a security function to protect your data and files. If you obtain data and files by the method below with the UIM inserted, UIM restrictions are automatically set to them.

- · When downloading images or melodies and so on, from sites or Internet web pages
- · When receiving i-mode mail with file attachments

The data or files with the UIM restrictions can be browsed, played back, started, edited, attached to mail, or transferred via infrared rays only when the UIM used for obtaining is inserted. When the UIM used for obtaining the data or files is not inserted, or when another UIM is inserted, these functions are not operable.

•In the explanation hereafter, the UIM used to obtain data and files is referred to as "your UIM" and other UIMs as "another person's UIM".



- When the UIM is not inserted or when another person's UIM is inserted, the following types of data and files are displayed with the restrictions symbol, "\square\":
 - · Videophone record messages
- Movie memos
- · Melodies
- Images
- i-motion movies

i-oppli programs

- Chara-den images
- PDF files

· Downloaded dictionaries

- Kisekae Tool files
 - Screen memos

· Files attached or pasted to i-mode mail in the Inbox

· Chaku-uta®/Chaku-uta Full® music files · Templates

- Files attached to i-mode mail in the Outbox/Draft (except the data shot or edited with the FOMA phone)
- · Messages R/F with files (melodies or images) attached or pasted
- · Images inserted into Deco-mail text
- %This function applies to the pre-installed i-oppli programs, Chara-den images, Decomail-pictographs, etc. if they are reinstalled (upgraded) from a site.
- * "Chaku-uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.
- The data set with the UIM restrictions appear on the preview display as shown on the right.



- When the UIM restrictions are set for data and files, you cannot set those data and files for the functions such as "Display setting" and "Select ring tone" when another person's UIM is inserted instead.
- If you have set the data and files with the UIM restrictions for the functions such as "Display setting" and "Select ring tone", these will work with their default settings if you remove your UIM or insert another person's UIM. If you insert your UIM again, then your settings will be enabled again.
- UIM restrictions are not set for the data received using the infrared data exchange function or data transmission (OBEX) function or the still images/moving images shot or edited with the FOMA phone.
- Even when another person's UIM is inserted, data and files set with the UIM restrictions can be moved or deleted.
- The settings of the following functions are stored on the UIM:
 - · SMS validity period
- · SMS center selection
- · Select language
- PLMN setting

- · Validating/Invalidating DoCoMo Certificate 1 and user certificate
- PIN1 code, PIN2 code
- · PIN1 code entry set

Differences of UIM (FOMA Card)

If you use the blue UIM with your FOMA phone, note that following specifications differ from those of the green/ white UIM:

Functions	UIM (blue)	UIM (green/white)	Reference
Number of digits of the phone number that can be stored in the UIM Phonebook	20 max.	26 max.	P.85
Operation of user certificate to use FirstPass	Cannot be used	Can be used	P.165
Use of WORLD WING**	Cannot be used	Can be used	P.386
Use of Service Numbers for "DoCoMo repair counter" and "General inquiries CoCoMo Information Center>"	Cannot be used	Can be used	P.370

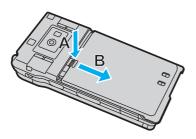
- *WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service that enables you to use the current phone number overseas for making and receiving calls using the UIM (green/white) and service compatible mobile phone.
- WYou do not need to subscribe to WORLD WING if you have subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005. If you offered that you did not need WORLD WING at the time you signed up for the FOMA service, or when you have midway canceled WORLD WING, you are required to take the procedures to newly subscribe to WORLD WING.
- ※If you have signed up for the FOMA service before August 31, 2005, and have not yet subscribed to WORLD WING, you are required to subscribe to it.
- *This service is not available with some billing plans.
- *If you lose your UIM (green/white) or have it stolen overseas, immediately contact DoCoMo to take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the UIM. For inquiries, see "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual. Note that you are still charged the call and communication fees incurred after you lose it or have it stolen.

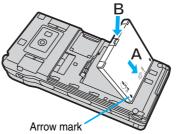
Attaching/Removing Batteries

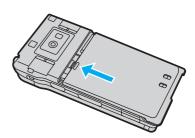
Use the FOMA phone's dedicated Battery Pack P15.

Attaching

- While pressing the "
 part in the direction A,
 slide the back cover
 (2 mm or more) in the
 direction B to unlock.
- With the arrow mark facing up, fit the tab side of the battery pack to the FOMA phone securely, and then push the battery pack into the direction B while pressing it against the direction A.
- 3 Slide the back cover in the direction of the arrow and attach it in place.

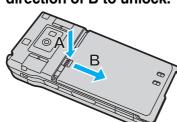




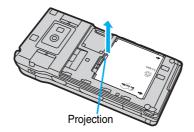


Removing

While pressing the "
part in the direction of A,
slide the back cover
(2 mm or more) in the
direction of B to unlock.



2 Take hold of the projection of the battery pack to lift it up.



Information

- Make sure that you attach/remove the battery with the FOMA phone closed and held in your hand after you turn off the power. Also, make sure not to press the one-push open button when you attach/remove the battery.
- Make sure that the tray for the UIM is not drawn out when attaching the battery. If the tray is drawn out, the battery cannot be attached. Note that if the battery is forcibly attached, the UIM or tray may be damaged.
- If you try to force the battery into place, you could damage the charging terminals of the FOMA phone.
- For details, refer to the instruction manual for Battery Pack P15.

Charging FOMA Phone

Use the FOMA phone's dedicated Battery Pack P15.

Life of battery pack

- Battery packs are consumables. The usable time shortens slightly each time they are charged.
- When the usable time of the battery pack becomes half the time it was purchased, replacing is recommended because the battery pack is nearing the end of its life. Depending on the use conditions, the battery pack may swell as it nears the end of its life, but this is not a problem.
- The life of the battery pack may shorten if you use i-oppli programs, talk on the videophone, watch One Seg programs and so on for a long time during charging.

For environmental protection, bring the exhausted battery pack to an NTT DoCoMo, dealer, or recycle shop.



Charging

- For details, refer to the instruction manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (option), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (option), and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (option).
- The FOMA AC Adapter 01 supports 100 V AC only. The FOMA AC Adapter 02 and FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use support from 100 V AC through 240 V AC.
- The shape of the plug for the AC adapter is for 100 V AC (for domestic use). To use the AC adapter that supports from 100 V AC through 240 V AC overseas, you need to have a conversion plug adapter that is compatible with the voltage of the country you stay. Do not use a transformer for overseas travel to charge the battery pack.
- Even during charging, you can still answer calls if the FOMA phone is turned on. This will consume the charged amount so that charging will take longer. Also, the standby time or talk time might be shorter if you charge the battery pack with your FOMA phone open.
- If you have a long time videophone call during charging, the temperature in the FOMA phone may rise and charging may be suspended. In such a case, wait for a while and try charging again.
- Do not watch One Seg programs for a lengthy time during charging as the operating life of the battery might be shortened.
- Remove and insert the connector slowly and carefully, without using unnecessary force.
- Do not remove the battery pack during charging.

Do not charge for long periods of time (several days) with the FOMA phone turned on.

• If you leave the FOMA phone powered on for long periods of time during charging, you may not be able to use the FOMA phone for long duration as expected and the low battery alarm may sound soon, because the FOMA phone receives the power from the battery pack after charging is completed. If this happens, charge the battery pack correctly. When charging the battery pack again, first remove the FOMA phone from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then set it again.

Estimated usable time for battery pack

(The usable time for the battery pack varies with the charging time and the remaining life of the battery pack.)

ĺ	Network	Switch 3G/GSM	Continuous standby time	Continuous talk time
ĺ	FOMA/3G	3G	In motion: Approx. 420 hours	Voice call: Approx. 200 minutes
			In motion: Approx. 370 hours	Videophone call: Approx. 110 minutes
			Standstill: Approx. 590 hours	
	GSM	Auto	Standstill: Approx. 220 hours	Voice call: Approx. 190 minutes

One Seg watching time
Approx. 270 minutes
(In ECO mode: Approx. 400 minutes)

- *The continuous talk time is the estimated time that the FOMA phone can be used for calls when radio waves can be sent and received normally.
- *The continuous standby time is the estimated time when radio waves can be received normally. The standby time could be about half of this estimate depending on the charge level of the battery pack, function settings, other ambient conditions such as temperature, and the status of radio waves in the area (weak or no radio waves, for instance). When you use i-mode communication, the talk/communication time and standby time will be shorter. Further, even if you do not make calls or not execute i-mode communication, the talk/communication time and standby time will be shorter if you watch One Seg programs, compose i-mode mail, start up a downloaded i-αppli program or the i-αppli Stand-by display, execute data communication or Multiaccess, use a camera, play back music, or use Bluetooth connections.
- *The continuous talk time and the continuous standby time may be shortened depending on the network environment in the country you stay.
- *The continuous standby time for standstill is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA phone in standstill status when it is closed and can receive radio waves normally.
- *The continuous standby time for in motion is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA phone in the combined status of "standstill" "moving" and "out of the service area" when it is closed, in an area where it can receive radio waves normally.
- **The One Seg watching time is the estimated time for when radio waves can be received normally with the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01 (option) connected. The watching time might be shortened depending on the charge level of the battery pack, function settings, other ambient conditions such as temperature, and the status of radio waves in the area (weak or no radio waves, for instance).

Estimated time for charging battery pack

AC adapter	Approx. 130 minutes	DC adapter	Approx. 130 minutes
------------	---------------------	------------	---------------------

^{*}The charging time is an estimate of time for when empty battery pack is charged with the FOMA phone turned off. The charging time will be longer if you charge the battery pack with the power of the FOMA phone turned on.

Charge with AC Adapter and Desktop Holder

- Connect the AC adapter (option) to the desktop holder (option).
- Insert the AC adapter's plug into a power socket.
- Put the bottom of the FOMA phone into the stopper of the desktop holder (A) to fit the head to the lock claw, and then depress the FOMA phone until it clicks (B).

Check that the Call/Charging indicator lights in red.

When the Call/Charging indicator flickers, dismount the AC adapter and battery pack from the FOMA phone and then re-mount them for charging.

If the symptom persists, troubles with the AC adapter, desktop holder or battery pack may be involved, so consult a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop.

- The charging confirmation tone (see page 101) sounds when charging starts and ends. However, it does not sound when the power is off or during Manner Mode or Public Mode (Drive Mode).
- Be sure to set the FOMA phone firmly onto the desktop holder. Also, be careful that the connector cap or a commercial strap is not caught between the FOMA phone and desktop holder.
- Charging can be done even when the FOMA phone is open.

When charging is completed, hold the desktop holder and lift up the head of FOMA phone to remove.

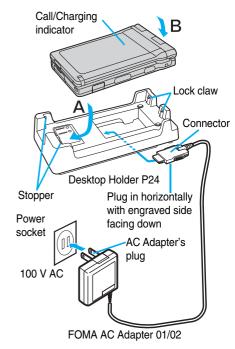
• Unplug the AC adapter from the power socket when you are not going to use it for a long time.

■Indicator and display during charging and when charging is completed

	Call/Charging indicator	"🗐" display
Charging	Lights in red	Blinks
Charging completed	Off	Lights

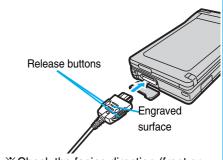
•When the FOMA phone is turned off, "[]" does not appear.

If you start charging with the battery flat, the Call/Charging indicator might not light immediately; however, charging itself has started.



When charging with the AC adapter only

Insert the connector with the engraved surface facing up until it clicks. Pull straight the connector out while pressing the release buttons.



**Check the facing direction (front or rear) of the AC adapter plug and then insert or pull it horizontally into or out of the FOMA phone.

Malfunction could result if you try to pull it forcibly.

■DC adapter (option)

With the DC adapter, you can use a cigarette lighter socket (12 V/24 V) of cars to charge the FOMA phone with the battery pack attached.

For details, refer to the instruction manual for the FOMA DC Adapter 01/02.

Information

• If the fuse blows off when charging with the DC adapter, be sure to use a 2A fuse. The 2A fuse is consumables, so purchase at auto parts stores in your neighborhood.

<Battery Level>

Checking Battery Level

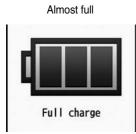
When the FOMA phone is turned on, an estimate of the battery level is indicated by the icon.

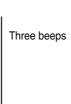
- · Almost full
- · Getting low
- · Almost empty
- Charge the battery when it is almost empty.

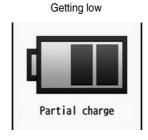
Check by Display and Tone

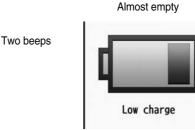
You can check an estimate of the battery level by the display and sound.

Settings ➤ Other settings ➤ Battery ➤ Battery level









One beep

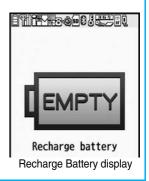
*Almost empty. Charge the battery.

• The pictograph disappears after about three seconds.

■When the battery is running out

The display on the right appears and the low battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds. To stop this alarm, press any key other than |▲| and |▼|. About one minute later, the FOMA phone will be turned off.

 During a call, a beeping tone from the earpiece notify you of the low battery. About 20 seconds later your call will be cut and then one minute later the FOMA phone will be turned off.



<Power ON/OFF>

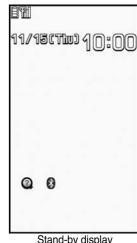
Turning Power On/Off

Turn Power On

Press and hold () for at least one second.

After the Wake-up display (see page 105) is displayed, the Stand-by display appears.

- If you have stored many Phonebook entries or mail messages, it may take a while for the display to appear.
- If Set Time is set, the current date and time are shown.
- ●When "□ is displayed, the FOMA phone is out of the service area or in the place where the radio waves do not reach. Move to a location where "Ph" disappears.
- If "Starting System Wait a minute" is displayed, wait for a while and then proceed.



Stand-by display

■When your UIM is replaced (except during Omakase Lock)

Enter the four- to eight-digit Terminal Security Code after turning on the power. When you enter the correct Terminal Security Code, the Stand-by display appears. If you enter the incorrect Terminal Security Code five times in succession, the power turns off. (However, you can turn on the power again.)

■When "PIN1 code entry set" of "UIM setting" is set to "ON"

Enter the four- to eight-digit PIN1 code after you turn on the power. When you enter the correct PIN1 code, the Stand-by display appears. See page 118 for PIN1 code.

■When "Auto reset setting" of "Notice call cost" is set to "ON" (except during Omakase Lock)

Enter the four- to eight-digit PIN2 code after you turn on the power. When you enter the correct PIN2 code, the Stand-by display appears. If you press CLR or without entering the correct PIN2 code, "Auto reset setting" is set to "OFF" and the Stand-by display appears. See page 118 for PIN2 code.

Information

• Each entry display appears in the order of "PIN1 code" "Terminal Security Code" "PIN2 code".

Turn Power Off

🕇 Press and hold 窜 for at least two seconds.

The exit display appears and the power turns off.

• You cannot turn on the power immediately after turning off the power. Wait a few seconds.

<Select Language>

Switching to English



• The following functions are different between Japanese display and English display:

Functions	Japanese	English
Info Notice Setting	電子音 (Electrical tone)	ON
	ボイス (Voice)	Not available
	OFF	OFF
"Clock" "Day of week" of Display Setting	Available	Not available
使いかたナビ (Guide)	Available	Not available
Voice Guidance	Available	Not available

Information

●When you insert the UIM, the "バイリンガル (Select language)" setting is stored on the UIM.

<Initial Setting>

Executing Initial Settings

If the date and time, Terminal Security Code, Keypad Sound, Caller ID Setting, or Location Request Menu is not set, the Initial Setting display appears when the power is turned on. You can set the initial settings also from each menu function separately.

1 Turn on the power ➤ YES

 When the display for entering your Terminal Security Code, PIN 1 code, or PIN 2 code appears, follow the operation on page 45.

You can select "Auto time adjust ON" or "Auto time adjust OFF" for setting the time. (See page 46)



Set the date and time.

🙎 Set your Terminal Security Code.

You can set your Terminal Security Code required for setting functions. (See page 118)

1. Enter "0000" ➤ Enter your new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits) ➤ YES

Set Keypad Sound.

You can set the keypad whether to make a sound. (See page 101)

1. ON or OFF

Set Location Request Menu.

You can set whether to notify your current location for when a GPS location provision request arrives. (See page 240)

Set the size of characters.

You can set the size of characters on the display at a time. (See page 115)

Information

- When an unset function is found, the Initial Setting display for an unset function appears each time you turn on the power.
- The completed settings are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing are valid even when the call even are valid even when the call even are valid even are valid
- When the power is automatically turned on by alarm notification, the Initial Setting display does not appear even if there is any unset function.
- When you finish the initial setting, the confirmation display appears telling that updating software is executed automatically. This display appears only at the first time, and after that, does not appear until you execute Reset Settings or Initialize.

<Set Time> Setting Date and Time

You can select whether to correct the time automatically or set it manually. The time is set/displayed on the 24-hour basis.

Settings Clock Set time Auto time adjust ON or Auto time adjust OFF

Auto time adjust ON Corrects the date/time automatically. The setting is completed.

If the time is not automatically corrected such as when "
"is displayed and the date/time has not been set, the display for manually correcting the time appears. Follow step 2 to set the date/time.

Auto time adjust OFF . . . Sets the date/time manually.

• When "Notice call cost" is set to "ON", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.

Enter year, month, date and time.

Use to move the cursor and enter numbers by the numeric keys.

- To enter one-digit numeral for the date and time, enter two digits beginning with "0" as in "01" through "09".
- ◆Highlight "time zone" and press ☒(Edit), to set the time zone. Use ☒ to select a region and press ☒(Select).

1	Manual time se	tting
(۱	(ear) 2 0 0 7	
ì	/ear) 2 007 Date)11∕1	5
(Ì	ime) 1 0 : 0	0
(1	ime zone)	
	Japan	(GMT+

3)(1)

■About date/time correction function

The time displayed on the FOMA phone is corrected according to the clock information obtained from the network.

The time is corrected when you show the Stand-by display with "Auto time adjust ON" set. If you want to set the time with a lag, set the time manually.

- Some few second errors might occur. You might not be able to correct the time depending on the radio wave conditions, or the i-oppli program set for the i-oppli Stand-by display.
- When you receive the clock information overseas and the time difference correction information differs from the previously received one, "Time is adjusted" is displayed and the time difference is corrected automatically. Press "OK" to update the time and show Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, sent/received mail messages and others in local time.
- When the time difference is corrected overseas, the sub clock (Japanese date/time, etc.) is displayed below the clock on the Stand-by display.
- Depending on the networks overseas, the time difference might not be corrected.

- Unless Set Time is set, the functions which use the clock such as Schedule do not work correctly. Further, the date/time for redial items and received call records are not stored.
- The FOMA phone has an internal backup battery. The set time is stored in the internal backup battery so is kept even when you change the battery. However, the time could be reset if the battery is detached for two or more weeks. In this case, charge the FOMA phone and then set the clock again. Also, when using the FOMA phone for the first time after purchase, attach the battery to the FOMA phone and then charge it. This charges the internal backup battery as well.
- The sub clock is not displayed while "Set time" is set to "Auto time adjust OFF" or in Japan.
- This function supports clock settings from 00:00 on January 1, 2007 through 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

<World Time Watch>

Displaying World Time

You can display the time of the specified area under the Stand-by display clock.

Settings Clock World time watch ON or OFF Use to select an area and press (Select).

Information

• World Time Watch does not appear when "Display setting" "Clock" "Clock display" is set to "OFF", or when you use the FOMA phone overseas.

Summer Time

You can advance the time displayed for the overseas country you stay and for a region of World Time Watch by one hour.

Settings Clock Summer time ON or OFF

<Caller ID Notification>

Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

You can set the FOMA phone to send your phone number to the called party's phone when dialing. Your phone number is important information, so take utmost care when notifying your phone number. This function is available only when the other party's phone supports Caller ID.

Set Caller ID Notification to Network

MENU 1 7

You can set whether to notify your caller ID on the network.

Service Caller ID notification Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Activate	►ON or OFF
Check setting	You can check the setting contents of "Activate".

Set Caller ID Notification when Making a Call

Each time you dial out, you can set whether to notify your caller ID.

Enter a phone number

O

bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

- y (FUNC) Notify caller ID Don't notify or Notify caller (OFF or ON)
 - To release "Notify caller ID", select "Cancel prefix". Whether to notify or not follows the setting for "Activate" of "Caller ID notification".

Set "Notify/Not Notify" by Entering "186/184"

You can select whether to notify the other party of your phone number also by entering "186"/"184" before the other party's phone number.

To notify your caller ID

186→Destination phone number

Government of the last of the last

Press (☑)(V. phone) to make a videophone call.

Not to notify your caller ID

184→Destination phone number ► 💪 or 🕒 (Dial

Press (☑)(V. phone) to make a videophone call.

Information

- When you make a call and hear the guidance requesting your caller ID (see page 369), follow the steps of "To notify your caller ID" to enter "186" and redial.
- When you make a PushTalk call, "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" or "Notify caller ID" is valid, but "notify/not notify" by adding "186"/ "184" is invalid.
- You cannot set "Caller ID notification" while "調" is displayed.

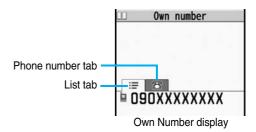
Checking Your Own Number

Your phone number (own number) is stored on the UIM.

↑ (MENU) ➤ Phonebook ➤ Own number

You can press o to switch the tabs.

• See page 342 for storing/displaying personal data.



MENU O

Information

- In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can switch between Number A and Number B by pressing (Change) from the Own Number display. " appears for Number A, and " appears for Number B.
- When you replace a UIM with another one (2in1 contractor page 373) and then set "2in1 setting" to "YES", or perform "Auto acquire No. B" (see page 342), to acquire the correct Number B. When you replace a UIM with another one (2in1 contractor 2in1 non-contractor), perform "2in1 function OFF" as well to update the owner's information to the correct one.

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making Calls/Videophone Calls	
About Videophone	50
Making a Call/Videophone Call	50
Switching between a Voice Call and Videophone Call	52
Using Call Records	53
Setting Chaku-moji	55
Sending Touch-tone Signals Quickly	57
International Calls	57
Setting for International Calls	58
Storing Numbers to be Added to the Beginning of a Phone Number Prefix Setting	59
Making a Call with Specified Sub-addressSub-address Setting	59
Setting Alarm for ReconnectingReconnect Signal	59
Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear	59
Switching to Hands-free	60
Using Hands-free Compatible Devices	60
Osing natios-free Compatible Devices	00
Receiving Calls/Videophone Calls	
Receiving a Call/Videophone Call	60
Switched between a Voice Call and Videophone Call by the Other Party	62
Setting Response of Key Operation for Answering Incoming Calls Answer Setting	62
Setting Response for when Opening FOMA Phone during Ringing <setting opened="" when=""></setting>	63
Setting Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during a Call Setting when Folded	63
Adjusting Earpiece Volume	63
Adjusting Ring Volume	64
When You Cannot or Could not Answer the Call	
Putting an Incoming Call on Hold when You cannot Answer at Once (On Hold)	64
Putting a Call on Hold during a CallHolding>	64
Setting Hold Tone	65
Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)	65
Using Public Mode (Power Off)	66
If You could not Answer an Incoming Call	67
Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer the Call	
	67
Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer the Call during Ringing	
······································	68
Playing Back/Erasing Record Messages/a Voice Memo/Videophone Record Messages/Movie Memos	
Play/Erase Messages> (Play/Erase Videophone Messages>	68
Making Full Use of Videophone Calls	
Using Chara-den	69
Useful Functions for Videophone Calls	70
·	70 71
Setting Videophone Hands-free	
Setting Image Quality for Videophone Calls	71
Changing Image Displays for Videophone Calls	71
Redialing as a Voice Call when a Videophone Call cannot be Connected	70
	72
Setting for Switching between a Voice Call and a Videophone Call\Notify Switchable Mode	72
Selecting Response to Incoming Videophone Calls during i-mode (Videophone while Packet)	72
Connecting FOMA Phone to External Devices to Use Videophone Function	73
Checking inside the Room when You are OutRemote Monitoring	73

About Videophone

You and the other party can talk viewing each other's

DoCoMo videophones conform to 3G-324M, standardized by the international standard 3GPP. You cannot connect to the videophone that uses a different format.

•3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project):

This is the regional standards organization for developing common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

•3G-324M:

This is the international standard for the third generation of mobile videophones.

 The P905i supports only 64 kbps communication speed of videophone dialing. You can talk but cannot make a videophone call at 32 kbps communication speed.

O

0

MAVE SOM:

Display during videophone calls

- ...Receiving image (Image through) the other party's camera or substitute image)
- 2...Sending image (Image through your camera or substitute image)
- 3...Call duration
- 4...Status

: 64K communicating

註: 32K communicating

A: Voice sending/receiving

(gray): Voice sending/ receiving failed*1

V: Image sending/receiving

(gray): Image sending/receiving failed^{*2}

: Camera image sending

: Substitute image sending

"!" : Chara-den talking

: Hands-free activated

: AV output

: Bluetooth communicating

☼: Portrait

🖓 : Close-up

: Landscape

🗐: Night Mode

🚉: Chara-den Whole Action Mode

📲 : Chara-den Parts Action Mode

123: DTMF Transmission Mode

X1 When voice sending fails, the other party cannot hear your

When voice receiving fails, you cannot hear the other party's voice.

32 When image sending fails, the sending image is not displayed at the other end.

When image receiving fails, the receiving image is not displayed.

When voice or image sending/receiving fails, it does not recover automatically. You need to make a videophone call again.

Making a Call/Videophone Call

- Enter the other party's phone number, starting with the city code.
 - When 27 or more digits are entered, the lower 26 digits only are displayed.
 - To store an entered phone number in the Phonebook, press (MENU) (Store). Go to step 2 of "Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook" on page 88.
 - Even when you are dialing within the same area, you need to enter the city code before the phone number.

<Example>

City code Local code Phone number 03 XXXX

To make calls to mobile phone

090 - XXXX - XXXX Other party's phone number (11 digits) 080 - XXXX - XXXX

To make calls to PHS

070 - XXXX - XXXX Other party's phone number (11 digits)

When Making a Voice Call

Press ar or () (Dial).

• " blinks during dialing, and lights during a call.



O9OXXXXXXXXX

XXXX

When Making a Videophone Call

Press [☑](V. phone).

- "F" blinks during dialing and lights during the call.
- During a videophone call, you can press (MENU) (Subst.) to display the substitute image at the other party. To resume the image through your camera, press (MENU) (Me) again.



The digital communication charging starts from this

Press () to end the call after talking.

- If you hear the guidance requesting your caller ID (see page 369), follow the steps of "To notify your caller ID" on page 48 to enter "186" and redial.
- When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you can hear the other party's voice from the earphone. (See page 346)
- If you close the FOMA phone during a call, the FOMA phone works in accordance with the setting of "Setting when folded". (See page 63)
- If you switch to Horizontal Open Style during a call, the FOMA phone is set to "No tone". (See page 63)
- You can press numeric keys to send touch-tone signals during a call. During a Chara-den call, you need to switch to DTMF Transmission Mode. (See page 71)
- You cannot make a call in Horizontal Open Style. However, when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you can make a call in Horizontal Open Style.
- In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can make a call after selecting Number A or Number B. (See page 374)

<For Voice Calls>

You can make a voice call also by pressing and then entering the party's phone number. If you enter a wrong number, press to clear the display and then redial.

<For Videophone Calls>

- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by "Hands-free w/ V. phone" (see page 71). However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ V. phone".
- When you make a videophone call with substitute image, note that you will still be charged for the digital communication, not the voice calls.
- If you make a videophone call at 110/119/118 from the FOMA phone, it is automatically dialed out as a voice call.
- During a videophone call, you can send a Chara-den image to the other party instead of the image through your camera. (See page 69)
- The international videophone call is available using the DoCoMo international call service "WORLD CALL". (See page 57)

■Display during dialing

The other party's name and icon will be displayed if the party's phone number and name are stored in the Phonebook. However, the image will not be displayed, even if it is stored in the Phonebook.

- If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 89) is displayed.
- The phone number instead of the name will be displayed if the Phonebook entry has been stored as secret data, or if Personal Data Lock is activated.

■If you entered a wrong phone number

Each time you press CLR, the digit on the far right is cleared. If you press and hold CLR for at least one second, all the digits are cleared and the Stand-by display returns.

 Press O to move the cursor to the digit you want to clear, and then press CLR to clear it. To clear all the digits on and to the right of the cursor, press and hold CLR for at least one second.

If a videophone call could not be connected

The reason why it could not be connected is displayed. (The displayed reason might not be the same as the actual reason depending on the type of the other party's phone and contract for network services.)

Messages	Reasons
Check number,	You have dialed a non-existent phone
then redial	number.
Busy	The other party is busy. (Depending
	on the receiver's phone, this message
	might be displayed during packet
	communication as well.)
Busy with packet	The packet communication is
transmission	progress at the other end.
Out of service area/	The other party's phone is out of the
power off	service area or turned off.
Set caller ID to ON	Your caller ID is not notified.
	(when dialing "visualnet")
Your call is being	During forwarding
forwarded	
Redial using voice	The other party activates Call
call	Forwarding Service but the forwarding
	destination phone does not support
	videophone calls.
Upper limit has	The upper limit for the plan with the
been exceeded	limit function (Type Limit, Family Wide
Connection failed	Limit) is exceeded.
Please make your	You did not make a videophone call
call from the i-mode	from the IP (Information Provider) site
web page	among i-mode official sites (at dialing
	to V-live).
Connection failed	Redial after setting "Activate" of
	"Caller ID notification" to "ON".
	This may appear in the case other
	than above.

Auto-redialing

If "Voice call auto redial" is set to "ON", and a videophone call is not connected, a voice call is automatically made.

- Videophone calls cannot be connected to the phones that do not support the videophone function, or to the phones that are out of the service area or turned off even if they are videophones. If you have set "Voice call auto redial" to "ON" and attempt to dial a phone that does not have the videophone function, the number will be redialed as a voice call. However, this operation might not work if you call an ISDN-synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point or an ISDN videophone that does not support 3G-324M (as of October 2007), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that you could be charged for the communication.
- Once the videophone call has started communications, redialing as a voice call will not be made.

Function Menu while Entering Phone Number

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Notify caller ID	See page 47.
Prefix numbers	See page 59.
Int'l dial assis	t See page 58.
Select image	See page 72.
Multi number	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party. (See page 372.)
Add to	See page 87.
phonebook	
Compose	You can compose a mail message to send to
message	the phone number set as the destination
	address.
	Go to step 3 on page 172.
Chaku-moji	See page 55.

Switching between a Voice Call and Videophone Call

You (caller) can switch between a voice call and a videophone call. This function is available for the mobile phones that can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

Switch from a Voice Call to Videophone Call

When the other party's phone has a function to switch between the calls, "V. phone" is displayed on your phone and you can switch from the voice call to videophone call.

During a voice call (V. phone) Change



- When you select an image to be sent to the other party, select "Select image". Go to step 2 of "Set by Call" on page 72.
- When "Cancel" is selected, the FOMA phone cancels switching and returns to the voice call.
- While switching, the voice guidance is played back.

Switch from a Videophone Call to Voice Call

When the other party's phone has a function to switch between the calls, you can switch from the videophone call to voice call by selecting "CHG to voice call" from the Function menu.

During a videophone call ► (FUNC)

CHG to voice call ➤ YES



- Select "NO" on the confirmation display to stop switching and to resume the videophone call.
- While switching, the voice guidance is played back.

Information

- You can switch between a voice call and a videophone call repeatedly.
- When i-mode or packet communication is in progress, the communication is disconnected and then the voice call is switched to the videophone call.

- When packet communication is in progress at the other end, the message to the effect that the communication cannot be switched is displayed and the voice call continues without switching to the videophone call.
- You cannot switch from the voice call to the videophone call while "Multi calling" is displayed during the call if you have signed up for Call Waiting Service.
- It takes about five seconds to switch. Switching may take a longer time depending on the radio wave conditions.
- Depending on how the caller's phone is working or on the radio wave conditions, switching between a voice call and videophone call may fail and the connection may be cut off.
- If you switch between the voice call and videophone call during a call, the call duration and call cost are counted respectively for the calls. You are not charged while "Changing" is displayed.
- You cannot switch between the videophone call and voice call unless "Notify switchable mode" is set to "Indication ON" at the other end. See page 72 for "Notify switchable mode".
- When you switch a videophone call to voice call, Hands-free is deactivated.

<Redial> <Dialed Calls> <Received Calls> Using Call Records

The FOMA phone can store the other party's phone number and date/time you have dialed or received. You can call back to the other party.

Up to 30 records of dialed voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and the older record of dialing to the same phone number is deleted. However, the dialing by PushTalk is retained in Redial separately from that of the voice call or videophone call even if you dial to the same phone number.

■Dialed Calls

Up to 30 records of dialed voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and up to 30 records of 64K data and packet communications are stored in total as well. The older records of dialing to the same phone number are also retained.

Received Calls

Up to 30 records of incoming voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and up to 30 records of 64K data and packet communications are stored in total as well. The older records coming from the same phone number are also retained.

- When a call is switched between a voice call and a videophone call, the call that is dialed/received first is stored.
- When more than 30 calls are dialed, the older records are automatically deleted. Even if you turn off the FOMA phone, call records are not deleted.
- •In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 60 redial items, 90 dialed call records, and 120 received call records for Number A and Number B are stored in total.

■Icons for Redial, Dialed Calls, and Received Calls

I □ (c.phone / □ u.c.miss ※	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of
	voice call
TEMPHONE / TEMMISS X	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of
	videophone call

Paralk / Pamiss *	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of PushTalk	
	Dialed and received group calls/missed	
Talk / PRMISS /	group calls of PushTalk	
S Push / S Luce X	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of	
P® Push / P®MISS *	PushTalk via server's phonebook	
PT 1400	Voice/Video messages are recorded on	
⊞ MSG	Record Message	
⊯ REMOTE	Incoming calls of Remote Monitoring	
hander / hande	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of	
□%PHONE / □%MISS **	international call	
	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of	
ESPHONE / ESMISS *	international videophone call	
≥ z	Dialed calls of 64K data communication	
h 0444 / h 1400 **	Received calls/missed calls of 64K data	
<u>□ 64K</u> / <u>□ MISS</u> *	communication	
≥ •	Dialed calls of packet communication	
□+PACKET / □+ MISS ※	Received calls/missed calls of packet communication	
	Received calls of 64K data communication	
CONNECT	and packet communication when no	
	external device is connected	
	Received Chaku-moji message	
•	Records with time difference corrected	
₽B	Records for Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)	
	,	

* The unchecked missed call icons are highlighted.

Use Redial/Dialed Calls

When Using Redial

Press [🔾].

When Using Dialed Calls

MENU ► Phonebook ► Dialed/recv. calls

Dialed calls

The list for call records is displayed.

• For redial items of PushTalk, press () (Select) to show the Redial List of the group. Highlight a party and press |₽ to make a PushTalk call. If you do not highlight any party and press |₽|, you can make a group call.



● Press (MENU) (Change) to display the Sent Address List.

Select a call record.

The detailed display for the call record is displayed.

• When the other party is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed. If the same phone number is stored with multiple



names in the Phonebook, the name and icon that come first in the search order (see page 89) are displayed.

Use Received Calls



Press 🔘.



. . . All the records including missed calls

Missed calls

...The records of missed calls only
In Dual Mode of 2in1, the number of missed calls for
Number A and Number B is displayed respectively.
(If unchecked missed calls are found, the number of

them is displayed.)

- ◆ For received call records of PushTalk, press
 (Select) to show the Received Call List of the group with " " mark added to the caller. Highlight a party and press p to make a PushTalk call. If you do not highlight any party and press p, you can make a group call.
- Press MENU (Change) to display the Received Address List.

Select a received call record.

• The caller ID is displayed if it was provided; and if this caller has been stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed. If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name and icon



that come first in search order (see page 89) are displayed. If there was a call for packet communication, the sender's access point name (APN) is displayed. When the other party's phone number is not notified, the reason for no caller ID is displayed.

- For missed calls, the ring time is displayed on the right of the received date/time.
- When a Chaku-moji message is received, it is displayed.

■To make a call to a displayed redial item, dialed call record, or received call record

Press to make a voice call. You can make a voice call also by pressing (Dial) from the detailed display.

Press (V. phone) to make a videophone call and press to make a PushTalk call.

Information

 You can make a voice call to the most recently dialed or received number by pressing from the Stand-by display and then .

Information

- When you make/receive a call with an additional number of Multi Number, the stored name for the additional number is displayed below the phone number on the detailed display. If you store a phone number for "Number setting" of "Multi number", the phone number is displayed as well.
- The dialed call records of 64K data communication are stored only when the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option) is connected.
- Even if you make a voice call (or videophone call) to the phone number in a received call record with a Chaku-moji message displayed, the received Chaku-moji message is not sent.
- When a call comes in from a party who uses a dial-in phone number, a different phone number might be displayed.

Function Menu while Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls is Displayed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation	
Notify caller ID	See page 47.	
Prefix numbers	See page 59.	
Int'l dial assist	See page 58.	
2in1 dial	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 374)	
Multi number	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party. (See page 372)	
Chaku-moji	See page 55.	
Character size	You can switch the character size for the list between Large and Standard. The setting here applies to "Dialed/recv. calls" of "Character size".	
Add to phonebook	See page 87. • You can store the phone number in the Phonebook also by pressing MENU (Store) from the detailed display. Go to step 2 of "Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook" on page 88.	
Feel * Talk	See page 110.	
Ring time [Received Call List only]	You can display the ring time for missed calls. Even if you have set "Missed calls display" of "Ring time" to "Not display", the missed calls which stopped ringing within the ring start time and their ring times are displayed.	
Add desktop icon	See page 114.	
Compose message	You can compose a mail message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 172.	
Compose SMS	You can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 of "Composing SMS Messages to Send" on page 206.	

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Sent address [Redial/Dialed Calls only]	See page 195.
Received address [Received Calls only]	See page 195.
Delete this	YES
Delete selected	Put a check mark for redial items, dialed call records, or received call records to be deleted ✓ (Finish) ➤ YES
Delete all	► Enter your Terminal Security Code ➤ YES
Delete all Select image	See page 72.
Select image Store in	See page 72.

<Delete this> <Delete selected> <Delete all>

• If you execute "Delete all" from the Function menu of Redial/Dialed Calls, all records in both Redial and Dialed Calls are deleted. Even if you execute "Delete this" or "Delete selected" of Redial, the records are not deleted from Dialed Calls and they are retained. To delete the dialed call records, delete them from the Function menu while "Dialed calls" is displayed.

<Store in P-Talk PB>

 You cannot store from the call record for the party who is not stored in the Phonebook.

<Store P-Talk group>

 You cannot store in a PushTalk group unless all the members are stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

<Chaku-moji> Setting Chaku-moji

When making a voice call or videophone call, you can send your text message to tell the subject during calling.

- For details on Chaku-moji or compatible models, refer to DoCoMo web page or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- The sending end is charged, but the receiving end is not charged.

■When a Chaku-moji message is received

A Chaku-moji message is displayed below a caller. The Chaku-moji message is stored in Received Calls as well.



 The Chaku-moji message is displayed only during ringing. It is not displayed during a call.

- Even when a Chaku-moji message comes in within the ring start time set by "Ring time", it is received and recorded in Received Calls.
- The Chaku-moji message is displayed on the Private window when "Chaku-moji" of "Called" on page 106 is set to "ON".
- •The Chaku-moji message is not displayed during Lock All, Omakase Lock, or Personal Data Lock. However, you can check the Chaku-moji message from Received Calls after the lock is released.

Store Chaku-moji Messages

You can store up to 10 Chaku-moji messages in the Message List.

- Service Chaku-moji Create message
 Highlight <Not stored> and press (Edit
 Enter a message.
 - To edit a stored message, highlight it and press (☐ Edit).
 - You can enter up to 10 characters regardless of whether they are pictographs, symbols, or full-pitch/half-pitch characters.

Make a Call with a Chaku-moji Message

Enter a phone number

bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

2 (FUNC) ➤ Chaku-moji ➤ Do the following operations.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Create	You can create a Chaku-moji message just
message	before dialing.
	► Enter a message.
	You can enter up to 10 characters
	regardless of whether they are pictographs,
	symbols, or full-pitch/half-pitch characters.
	● The Chaku-moji message created using this
	function is not stored in the Message List.
Select	From the Message List, you can select the
message	stored Chaku-moji message.
	Select a message.
Sent	From the Sent Message List, you can select a
messages	Chaku-moji message to be sent. Up to 10 sent
	Chaku-moji messages only are stored in the Sent
	Message List. If you send the same Chaku-moji
	message, the older one is deleted. When the
	number of sent Chaku-moji messages exceeds
	10, the messages are deleted from the oldest one.
	Select a sent message.

- Press (**4**) or (**0**)(Dial
 - Press (☑)(V. phone) to make a videophone call.
 - The Chaku-moji message being sent is displayed during dialing.

- When a Chaku-moji message has arrived at the other party's phone, "Transmission completed" is displayed, and you are charged a transmission fee.
- When a Chaku-moji message does not arrive at the other party's phone such as when the other party's phone is not a Chaku-moji compatible mobile phone or the call is not allowed by "Message disp. settings" at the receiving end, "Transmission failed" is displayed. In this case, you are not charged a transmission fee.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the transmission result may not be displayed at the sending end even if a Chaku-moji message has arrived at the other party's phone. In this case, you are charged a transmission fee.
- Even if you make a call sending a Chaku-moji message, the Chaku-moji message is not displayed and you are not charged a transmission fee (the call is not recorded in Received Calls at the receiving end) when the other party's phone is out of the service area, turned off, during Public Mode (Drive Mode), or the ring time for Record Message Setting is set to zero seconds. Also, the transmission result is not displayed at the sending end.
- When a videophone call is not connected and automatically dialed as a voice call, the Chaku-moji message is resent as well.
- Chaku-moji does not support PushTalk.
- You cannot send/receive Chaku-moji messages overseas.

Detailed Sent Message

Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji messages are stored in Sent Messages, and you can check for the other party's phone number and the date/time the Chaku-moji messages were sent. Older messages sent to the same phone number are also retained.

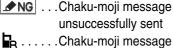
• In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 10 records for Number A and Number B can be displayed in total.

MENU ► Service ► Chaku-moji ► Sent messages

♪OK . . . Chaku-moji message successfully sent



▶NG . . . Chaku-moji message unsuccessfully sent



for Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)

- When the transmission result is not displayed, " ♠ OK " or " MG " is not displayed.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the transmission result might not be displayed correctly.

Select a sent message.

When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed.



Sent messages 1/2

1 11/15 10:00

Function Menu while Detailed Sent Message is **Displayed**

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Store	You can store a sent Chaku-moji message in
	the Message List.
	► <not stored=""></not>
	●You can store also by pressing (Store).
Delete this	▶YES
Delete all	► Enter your Terminal Security Code ➤ YES

Message Display Settings

You can set how incoming Chaku-moji messages are displayed.

MENU Service Chaku-moji Message disp. settings Select an item.

Display all messages

. . . Displays Chaku-moji messages from all callers.

Numbers stored in PB

. . . Displays Chaku-moji messages only from the callers stored in the Phonebook.

Calls with callerID

. . . Displays Chaku-moji messages only from the caller notifying his/her phone number.

Hide all messages

. . . Does not display Chaku-moji messages.

Information

•When you set to "Numbers stored in PB", you cannot receive Chaku-moji messages from the callers stored in the Phonebook B in A Mode of 2in1 (and vice versa).

Prefer Chaku-moji

You can set how your FOMA phone works for incoming Chaku-moji messages for when "Setting when opened" is set to "Answer".

MENU Service Chaku-moji ▶ Prefer Chaku-moji ► ON or OFF

> **ON**. Does not answer by opening the FOMA phone during ringing, so you can check a Chaku-moji message.

OFF. . . . Answers by opening the FOMA phone during ringing.

<Pause Dial>



Sending Touch-tone Signals Quickly

You can send touch-tone signals from your FOMA phone to use services such as reserving tickets, checking bank balance, etc.

Store Pause Dial

You need to store a number string to be sent as a touch-tone signal in the Pause Dial List. If you have inserted a pause (p), you can send a number string breaking at the point where the pause is inserted.



- When a number string is already stored, it is displayed.
- To delete a stored pause dial, press (FUNC) and select "Delete", then select "YES".

Enter a number string.

- Enter the pause (p) by pressing and holding ★ for at least one second.
- You can use only O through P, #, ★ to enter a number string and the pause (p).
- •You can enter up to 128 digits.
- You cannot enter a pause (p) at the beginning and end of a number string, or enter it consecutively.

Send Pause Dial

Settings Other settings Pause dial

Send

Enter a phone number

or

(Dial)

A voice call is made. Once the line is connected, a number string stored in Pause Dial is displayed up to the first pause (p).

- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, you can retrieve it selecting from the Search Phonebook display by pressing .
- You can search for the phone number also from Received Calls by pressing or from Redial by pressing o.

Check that the line is connected

► (Send)

A number string up to the first pause (p) is sent, and a number string up to the next pause (p) is displayed.

A number string up to the pause (p) is sent each time you press or (Send).

When you have finished sending the last number, the "Talking" display appears.

◆To send multiple pieces of a number string at a time, press and hold of for at least one second, and select "Send at one time".

Information

- During a call, you can send a number string also by displaying the Function menu of the Pause Dial display.
- Some devices on the receiving end cannot receive signals.
- You cannot send a number string with pauses during a videophone call.

<world call> International Calls

WORLD CALL is the international call service available from DoCoMo mobile phones.

When you have signed up for FOMA service, you have contracted to use "WORLD CALL" (except those who have applied not to use it).

- You can call about 240 countries and regions.
- The WORLD CALL charges are added to your monthly FOMA bill.
- The application/monthly fee is free of charge.
- Changes in procedures for international call "My Line" service is not available for mobile communications such as mobile phones, so cannot be used with WORLD CALL. However, in conjunction with the launch of "My Line" service, the dialing procedure for international calls from mobile phones has changed. Note that the old way of dialing (the way without "010" from the following operation) no longer works.
- The service is not available with some billing plans.
- Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual for inquiries about WORLD CALL.
- When using international carriers other than DoCoMo, contact them.

■ About international videophone calls

You can make international videophone calls to the other party who uses a specific 3G mobile phone overseas. Press [V. phone] instead of or [Dial] in the steps of "Enter a Phone Number to Make an International Call". (See page 58)

- For the information about connectable countries and telecommunications carriers, refer to the DoCoMo Global Service web page.
- Images sent from the other party may blur on your FOMA phone or you may not be able to connect, depending on the other party's phone used for the international videophone call.

Enter a Phone Number to Make an International Call

- Enter numbers in order of 009130→010→ country code→area code (city code)
 - →destination phone number
 - or (Dial)
 - When the area code (city code) begins with "0", enter it except for the "0". However, include "0" when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.
 - Press (☑)(V. phone) to make an international videophone call.

Use "+" to Make an International Call

When you enter a phone number for dialing or storing it in the Phonebook, press and hold O for at least one second to enter "+". You can use "+" to make international calls without entering an international call access code such as 009130-010.

- If you set "Auto assist setting" of "Int'l dial assist" to "ON", an international call access code of "IDD prefix setting" is automatically entered.
- O(for at least one second)
 - Enter numbers in order of country code area code (city code) destination phone number or (Dial) Dial
 - •When the area code (city code) begins with "0", enter it except for the "0". However, include "0" when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.
 - Press $(\square)(V. phone)$ to make an international videophone call.
 - When you select "Dial with orig. No.", you can make a call without adding an international call access code.

International Dial Assist

You can make a call adding a country code or international call access code to a phone number. (Except for some countries or regions, if the phone number starts with "0", the "0" at the beginning is automatically deleted.)

Enter a phone number

bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

-) [FUNC | ► Int'l dial assist
 - Select a country name ➤ Select a name
 - or (Dial)
 - Press (☑)(V. phone) to make an international videophone call.
 - When the beginning of the phone number is "+", you can select only an international call access code.
 - When "Japan" is selected as a country name, the display for selecting a name is not displayed.

<International Dial Assist> Setting for International Calls

Auto Assist Setting

You can set whether to replace "+" at the beginning of a phone number with an international call access code for when you make an international call from Japan.

- **Settings** Network setting
 - ► Int'l dial assist ► Auto assist setting
 - ➤ ON or OFF ➤ Select a country name
 - Select a name.
 - When no country code or international call access code is stored, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store it. Select "YES" and go to step 2 of "Country Code Setting" on page 58 for a country code, and go to step 2 of "IDD Prefix Setting" on page 58 for an international call access code.

Country Code Setting

You can store up to 27 country codes to be added for making international calls from overseas.

- **1** MENU ► Settings ► Network setting
 - Int'l dial assist ➤ Country Code set.
 - ► Highlight <Not recorded> and press



- If you select a stored country name, you can check the stored contents.
- Enter a country name ► Enter a country code.
 - You can enter a country name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
 - You can enter a country code of up to 5 digits. But you cannot use #, ★, and +.

IDD Prefix Setting

You can store up to three international call access codes to be added to the beginning of a phone number for making an international call.

- **1** (MENU) ► Settings ► Network setting
 - ► Int'l dial assist ► IDD prefix setting
 - ▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press

⊠(Edit).

- If you select the stored item, you can check the stored contents.
- 2 Enter a name Enter an international call access code.
 - You can enter a name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
 - You can enter an international call access code of up to 16 digits.

Function Menu while Country Code Setting/IDD Prefix Setting is Displayed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Edit	Go to step 2 of "Country Code Setting" on
	page 58 for Country Code Setting, and go to
	step 2 of "IDD Prefix Setting" on page 58 for
	IDD Prefix Setting.
	You can edit the item also by pressing
	☑(Edit).
Delete this	▶YES
Delete all	► Enter your Terminal Security Code ➤ YES

Information

- <Delete this> <Delete all>
- You cannot delete the country code or international call access code set by "Auto assist setting".

<Prefix Setting>

Storing Numbers to be Added to the Beginning of a Phone Number

You can store prefix numbers such as international call access codes or "186"/"184" and add them to the phone number for dialing. You can store up to seven prefix numbers.

- ► Settings ➤ Network setting
 ► Prefix setting ➤ Highlight <Not recorded>
 and press (Edit).
 - If you select a stored prefix, you can check the stored contents
 - To delete a stored prefix, press (FUNC) and select "Delete this" or "Delete all" then select "YES". If you select "Delete all", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.

- You can enter a name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
- You can enter a prefix number of up to 16 digits. The keys for entry are limited to
 O through
 O, #
 and
 X.

Prefix Numbers

You can add a prefix number to the beginning of phone number when you make a call.

Enter a phone number or

bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

- Prefix numbers

 Select a name

 ✓ or □ (Dial)
 - ◆ Press (V. phone) to make a videophone call and press (P) to make a PushTalk call.
 - For making a PushTalk call, adding a prefix number such as "186" or "184" to the beginning of the phone number is disabled.

Sub-address Setting> Making a Call with Specified Sub-address

You can set whether to regard the numbers after " \star " of a phone number as a sub-address to access the specified phones or data terminals.

- The sub-address is a number assigned to identify each ISDN terminal connected to an ISDN line. It is also used for selecting contents on "V-live".
- Sub-address setting ON or OFF

Information

Even if you set "Sub-address setting" to "ON", "X" at the top
of phone numbers and "X" immediately after the prefix
number or "186"/"184" are not regarded as sub-address
mark-off symbols.

<Reconnect Signal>



Setting Alarm for Reconnecting

You can set an alarm that sounds until a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk communication is reconnected after disconnected owing to bad radio wave conditions.

Select an alarm.

Information

- The reconnectable time differs depending on the usage status and radio wave conditions. An estimate is about 10 seconds and the call charge is applied also for that duration.
- While you are disconnected, no sound is transmitted to the other party.

<Noise Reduction>



Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear

Settings Talk Noise reduction
ON or OFF

<Hands-free> Switching to Hands-free

When you switch to Hands-free, sound such as the other party's voice is audible over the speaker.

During a call ►

When Hands-free is activated, " " is displayed.

- You can activate/deactivate Hands-free during a call.
 For videophone calls and PushTalk calls, you can activate/deactivate also during dialing or connecting.
- Press again to deactivate Hands-free.
- The sound volume during a Hands-free call follows the setting specified by "Volume" (earpiece volume).
- You can switch to Hands-free even during Manner Mode. Also, you will still hear voice through the speaker even when you activate Manner Mode during a Hands-free call.

Information

- While the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you cannot hear voice through the speaker even if you switch to Hands-free.
- Keep the FOMA phone well away from your ear during a Hands-free call. Otherwise you could affect or damage your hearing.
- Talk into the FOMA phone within a distance of about 50 cm.

<In-Car Hands-free> Using Hands-free Compatible Devices

You can make or receive voice calls from a Hands-free compatible device such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (option) or a car navigation system by connecting with your FOMA phone.

You can connect your FOMA phone to a Hands-free compatible device using two ways of connections as follows:

Connect using a cable (USB connection):

To use/charge via the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (option), you need to have the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (option).

Connect using Bluetooth (wireless):

To connect to a Bluetooth compatible Hands-free device, you need to register and connect it to the FOMA phone.

For how to operate Hands-free compatible devices, refer to the respective instruction manuals.

Information_

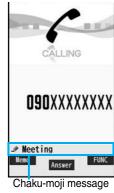
- To connect using a cable (USB connection), set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode".
- "" appears while you are talking or communicating using a USB Hands-free compatible device.

Information

- "" might appear while the FOMA phone is connected to a USB Hands-free compatible device, and "" while "USB mode setting" is set to "microSD mode", depending on the Hands-free device connected.
- The display or ring tone for incoming calls follows the settings of the FOMA phone.
- When the sound is set to output from a Hands-free compatible device, the ring tone sounds from that device even when Manner Mode is activated or "Ring volume" of the FOMA phone is set to "Silent".
- The receiving operation in Public Mode (Drive Mode) works in accordance with the "Public (Drive) mode" setting.
- The receiving operation while Record Message is activated works in accordance with the "Record message setting" setting.
- When the sound is set to output from the FOMA phone, the FOMA phone works in accordance with "Setting when folded" if it is closed during a call. When the sound is set to output from a Hands-free device, the communication state does not change regardless of "Setting when folded" even if you close the FOMA phone.

Receiving a Call/Videophone Call

- When you receive a call, the ring tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator flickers.
 - To vibrate the FOMA phone for incoming calls, set "Phone" or "Videophone" of "Vibrator" to other than "OFF".
 - When receiving a videophone call, "Incoming V.phone" is displayed.
 - " LACHHONE" is displayed at the upper right of the phone number for incoming international calls.



(See page 55)

For Answering a Voice Call

Press or (Answer) to answer the call.



For Answering a Videophone Call

Press or (Answer) to answer the videophone call.

You can send the image through your camera to the other party.

Press (Subst.) to take a videophone call, and the substitute image is sent to the other party. (Substitute image answering)

 Press (MENU) during a call to switch between the image through your camera and substitute image for sending to the other party.



Press 😰 to end the call after talking.

Information

- If you close the FOMA phone during a call, the FOMA phone works in accordance with the setting of "Setting when folded". (See page 63)
- You might hear beeps (in-call ring tone) during a call. If you have signed up for any of Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, or Call Forwarding Service and set "Arrival call act" to "Answer", the beeps (in-call ring tone) will sound for another incoming call, enabling you to do the following operations:

Voice Mail Service

...Transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service Center. (See page 365)

Call Waiting Service

... Put your current call on hold and answer the incoming call. (See page 366)

Call Forwarding Service

- ... Transfer the call to the registered forwarding destination. (See page 368)
- You can set "Reject unknown" not to accept calls from the phone numbers not stored in the Phonebook.

Information

 You cannot answer a call in Horizontal Open Style.
 However, when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you can answer a call in Horizontal Open Style.

<For Voice Calls>

●When "Answer setting" is set to "Any key answer", the call is placed on hold if you answer the call by pressing ▲ with the FOMA phone closed. If you have set "Setting when folded" to "No tone" or "End the call", the other party hears nothing, and if you have set "Setting when folded" to "Tone on", the call hold tone is played back. You can start talking by opening the FOMA phone.

<For Videophone Calls>

- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated during a videophone call as "Hands-free w/ V. phone" has been set to "ON". (See page 71) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ V. phone".
- Even if Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the call is not forwarded unless the forwarding destination is a phone compatible with the videophone conforming to 3G-324M (see page 50). Check the phone you are forwarding the call to and then activate the service. The videophone caller does not hear the guidance to the effect that the call is forwarded.

(The message to the effect that the call is to be forwarded appears, depending on the receiver's FOMA phone.)

- If a videophone call comes in from the phone number to be rejected by Nuisance Call Blocking Service, the video guidance for Call Rejection is played back and the call is disconnected.
- You can send a Chara-den image to the other party instead of the image through your camera. (See page 69)

■Display for incoming calls

When a caller's phone number is provided

If you store the caller's name, phone number, and image in the Phonebook, the name, phone number, and icon (or image) are displayed.

- If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 89) is displayed.
- The phone number but not the name is displayed during Personal Data Lock.
- For a forwarded call, the forwarder's phone number is displayed below the caller. (It might not be displayed in the case of some forwarders.)
- When you receive a call to an additional number of Multi Number, the stored name for the additional number is displayed below the caller. (With a forwarded call, you can press (Change) to switch to display of the forwarder.)

When a caller's phone number is not provided

The reason for no caller ID is displayed. (See page 128)

Function Menu while a Call is Ringing	
Function menu Operation/Explanation	
Call rejection	You can disconnect the call without answering.
Call forwarding	See page 368.
Voice mail	See page 365.

Switched between a Voice Call and Videophone Call by the Other Party

When you have set "Notify switchable mode" to "Indication ON", the caller (the other party) can switch between a voice call and videophone call.

 You (receiving end) cannot switch between a voice call and videophone call.

Switched from a Voice Call to Videophone Call by the Other Party

- The display for switching to a videophone call appears during a voice call.
 - **YES** . . . Sends the image through your camera to the caller.
 - NOSends a pre-installed substitute image to the caller.
 - While switching, the message to that effect is displayed and the voice guidance is played back.



Switched from a Videophone Call to Voice Call by the Other Party

When the caller (the other party) switches a videophone call to a voice call, the message telling that the call is being switched appears, the voice guidance is played back, and then the call is switched to a voice call.

<Answer Setting> Setting Response of Key Operation for Answering Incoming Calls

You can set to start talking (Any key answer) or to stop the ring tone (Quick silent) by pressing a key besides

, MENU (for videophone call) or (for PushTalk call) for when a call or PushTalk call comes in.

► Settings Incoming call

Answer setting Select a key operation.

Any key answer

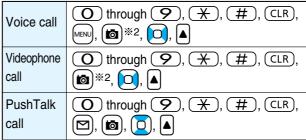
You can start talking by pressing any key shown below:



Quick silent

The following are the keys you can press to stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance:

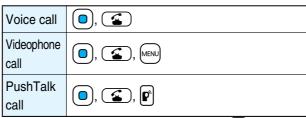
When "Setting when opened" is set to "Keep ringing", you can open the FOMA phone in Normal Style to stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance. Even if you stop it, the other party hears a calling tone.



● After you stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance by the key operation above, you can press or (for videophone call), or press (for PushTalk call) to start talking.

OFF

You can start talking by pressing a key shown below:



- *1 You can start talking also by pressing \(\sigma \) when five record messages have already been recorded.
- ※2 While "Change" is displayed, you cannot start talking or stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance.

 While the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you can press the switch to start talking, regardless of "Answer setting". (See page 347)

<Setting when Opened> Setting Response for when Opening FOMA Phone during Ringing

- Settings Incoming call
 - Setting when opened
 - Select an incoming type
 - ► Keep ringing or Answer

Information

- If you receive a videophone call with "Answer" set, the still image set for "Substitute image" of "Select image" is sent to the other party.
- You cannot answer calls by opening the FOMA phone in Horizontal Open Style even when "Answer" is set.

<Setting when Folded>



Setting Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during a Call

Set Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during a Voice Call/Videophone Call

Settings Talk Setting when folded Phone/Videophone Select an item.

No tone The voice is muted. The hold tone does not sound. The setting is completed.

Tone on The other party hears the hold tone set for "Holding tone" of "Set hold tone" while the FOMA phone is closed.

End the call... The call is finished. This is the same operation as pressing during a call. The setting is completed.

Speaker ON or Speaker OFF

Speaker ON. . . . The hold tone sounds from the speaker.

Speaker OFF . . . The hold tone does not sound from the speaker.

Set Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during PushTalk

Settings Talk Setting when folded PushTalk Speaker call or End the call

Information

- •This function is disabled when the Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch (option) is connected. The communication state does not change even if you close the FOMA phone during a voice call or PushTalk communication. If you close the FOMA phone during a videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party with the line connected.
- •If you close the FOMA phone during a videophone call with "No tone" activated, a substitute image is sent to the other party. When "Tone on" is set, the still image set for "Holding" of "Select image" is sent.
- If you set to "No tone" or "Tone on", "Holding" is displayed on the Private window when the FOMA phone is closed.
- Even when "End the call" has been set, the call does not end if you close your FOMA phone from Horizontal Open Style. "No tone" works for a voice call/videophone call, and "Speaker call" works for a PushTalk call.

<Volume> Adjusting Earpiece Volume

Settings ► Talk ► Volume ► Use ☐ or ☐ to adjust the earpiece volume.

Adjust the earpiece volume to Level 1 (minimum) through Level 6 (maximum).

● During a call, PushTalk call, or calling, you can press
or 🏝 / 🔻 to adjust the volume, and while entering phone number, you can press and hold of (for at least one second) to adjust it. Press or 🛋 / 🔻 within two seconds to adjust it.

Information

- The earpiece volume adjusted during a call is retained even after the call ends.
- When you adjust the earpiece volume, the sound volume during a Hands-free call or speaker call for PushTalk is also adjusted.

<Ring Volume>



Adjusting Ring Volume

You can adjust the ring volume for incoming calls and mail.

■ Settings Sound Ring volume

- ► Select an incoming type
- ► Use to adjust the volume.
- Following icons are displayed on the Stand-by display while the ring volume is set to "Silent":
 - : The ring volume for voice calls, PushTalk calls or videophone calls is "Silent".
 - Sa: The ring volume for mail, chat mail or Messages R/F is "Silent".
 - : The ring volume for voice calls, PushTalk calls, or videophone calls is "Silent" and the ring volume for mail, chat mail, or Messages R/F is "Silent".
- •If you have set "Step", the ring tone is silent for about three seconds, and then the volume steps up every three seconds, from Level 1 through Level 6.
- During ringing of a voice call or videophone call, you can adjust the ring volume also by pressing or by pressing and holding △/▼ for at least one second.
 However, you cannot adjust the ring volume in the following cases:
 - · Ring Volume is set to "Step".
 - "Answer setting" is set to "Quick silent" and you stop the ring tone or voice guidance.
 - · During Manner Mode
 - Incoming calls within the ring start time specified by "Ring time"

<On Hold>

Putting an Incoming Call on Hold when You cannot Answer at Once

During ringing

The FOMA phone makes three rapid beeps for confirmation and the call is put on answer-hold (On Hold).

- The confirmation tone does not sound while Manner Mode is activated or when "Phone" of "Ring volume" is "Silent".
- The other party hears the hold tone set for "On hold tone" of "Set hold tone". For videophone calls, the still image set for "On hold" of "Select image" is displayed.

Press (Answer) or (Land to release hold and answer the call.

- If a videophone call is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing
- (Answer) or to release hold. If you press

 MENU (Subst.) to release hold, the substitute image is sent.

Information

- The caller is charged for the call even during answer-hold (On Hold).
- If you press answer-hold (On Hold), the call will be disconnected.

<Holding> Putting a Call on Hold during a Call

During a call (Hold)

- The other party hears the hold tone set for "Holding tone" of "Set hold tone". For videophone calls, the still image set for "Holding" of "Select image" is displayed.
- You can put the call on hold by closing the FOMA phone during the call if you have set "Setting when folded" to "Tone on".

Press (Answer) or (4) to release hold and answer the call.

- If a videophone call is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing
- (Answer) or to release hold. If you press (Subst.) to release hold, the substitute image is sent.
- If you have set "Setting when folded" to "Tone on" and put the call on hold by closing the FOMA phone, open the FOMA phone or connect the Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch (option) to answer the call.
 If you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch to answer the videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party.

Information

- The caller is charged for the call even while the call is on hold
- If a new call comes in while the current call is put on hold, the hold (Holding) is released.

You can set the guidance the other party hears during on hold.

- - MENU Settings Talk Set hold tone
 - On hold tone or Holding tone
 - Select a hold tone.

Tone 1/2

... The caller hears the pre-installed guidance in Japanese.

JESU JOY OF MAN'S

... The caller hears the melody. You can set this for "Holding tone" only.

Voice announce

- ... The caller hears the sound recorded by "Voice announce". If it has not been recorded, this is not displayed.
- Press (☑)(Play) to play back a hold tone. Press (CLR) to end the demo playback.

<Public Mode (Drive Mode)> **Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)**

Public Mode is an auto-answer service that puts importance on manners in public spaces. Once you activate Public Mode, the guidance is played back telling that you cannot answer the call as you are currently driving or in a place (a train, bus, movie theater, etc.) where you should refrain from answering the call. Then the call is disconnected.



Press and hold (\times) for at least one second.

Public Mode is activated and " - " is displayed. When a call comes in, the guidance "The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cell phone should not be used. Please try again later." is played back for incoming calls.

 To deactivate Public Mode, perform the same operation. Then, Public Mode is deactivated and " | [---]" disappears.

Information

- You can activate/deactivate Public Mode only from the Stand-by display. You can activate/deactivate Public Mode even when "澤小" is displayed.
- You can make calls as usual even during Public Mode.
- If you make an emergency call at 110/119/118, Public Mode is released.
- When Public Mode and Manner Mode are activated simultaneously, Public Mode has priority.
- If a "User unset" call comes in while "Caller ID request" is set to "Activate", the Caller ID Request guidance is played back. (The Public Mode guidance is not played back.)
- You cannot use this function during data communication.

When Public Mode (Drive Mode) is activated

• Even when a call comes in, the ring tone does not sound. The "Missed call" icon appears on the display and the call is stored in "Received calls". The guidance is played back to the caller to the effect that you are currently driving or in an area where mobile phones should not be used. Then the call is disconnected. When a PushTalk call comes in, no answer is made and the message "Connection failed" appears on the caller's display. For the talk among three or more members, the message to the effect that you are driving is conveyed to them.

However, when the power is off or "圏外" is displayed, the caller hears the out-of-service area guidance instead of the Public Mode guidance.

- The ring tone does not sound and the Call/Charging indicator does not flicker even when mail or a message comes in. In addition, the set vibrator does not work.
- The ring tone for 64K data communication, alarm tone, and charging confirmation tone do not sound, and a melody while i-oppli is running is not played back.
- · The tickers of i-Channel are not displayed.
- The Call/Charging indicator does not light for "Illum. when folded".

Relations between incoming calls during Public Mode (Drive Mode) and respective services

Service	Responses to	Responses to Incoming
Sei vice	Incoming Voice Calls	Videophone Calls
Voice Mail	Plays back the Public	Does not play back the
Service*	Mode guidance, and	video guidance for
	then the call is	Public Mode, and the
	connected to the Voice	call is connected to the
	Mail Service Center.	Voice Mail Service
		Center.
Call	Plays back the Public	Does not play back the
Forwarding	Mode guidance, and	video guidance for
Service*	then the call is	Public Mode, and the
	forwarded to the	call is forwarded to the
	forwarding destination.	forwarding destination.
	Whether the guidance	If the destination does
	is played back or not	not support videophone
	depends on the	calls, the call is
	guidance setting of Call	disconnected.
	Forwarding Service. If	
	"Plays guidance" is set,	
	plays back the Public	
	Mode guidance. If	
	"Does not play	
	guidance" is set, does	
	not play back the	
	guidance.	
Call Waiting	Plays back the Public	Plays back the video
Service	Mode guidance, and	guidance for Public
	then the call is	Mode, and then the call
	disconnected.	is disconnected.

Service	Responses to Incoming Voice Calls	Responses to Incoming Videophone Calls
Nuisance	For the call from the	For the call from the
Call	phone number	phone number
Blocking	registered to be	registered to be
Service	rejected, plays back the	rejected, plays back the
	Call Rejection	video guidance for Call
	guidance, and then the	Rejection, and then the
	call is disconnected.	call is disconnected.
Caller ID	For the caller without a	For the caller without a
Display	caller ID, plays back	caller ID, plays back
Request	the Caller ID Request	the video guidance for
Service	guidance, and then the	Caller ID Request, and
	call is disconnected.	then the call is
	For the caller with a	disconnected.
	caller ID, plays back	For the caller with a
	the Public Mode	caller ID, plays back
	guidance, and then the	the video guidance for
	call is disconnected.	Public Mode, and then
		the call is
		disconnected.

When the ring time is set to 0 seconds, the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or the power is off, the Public Mode guidance is not played back, but Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service works. Note that in this case the call is not notified by the "Missed call" icon and not stored in "Received calls".

<Public Mode (Power Off)> Using Public Mode (Power Off)

Public Mode (Power Off) is an auto-answer service that puts importance on manners in public spaces. Once you activate Public Mode (Power Off), the guidance is played back telling that you cannot answer the call as you are currently in a place (hospital, airplane, around priority seat in a train, etc.) where use is prohibited. Then the call is disconnected.

1 Enter "X25251"▶**②**

Public Mode (Power Off) is set. (Nothing is changed on the Stand-by display.)

After setting Public Mode (Power Off) and turning off the power, the guidance "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later." is played back for incoming calls.

- To release Public Mode (Power Off), dial "
 ⁺√25250".
- To check the setting for Public Mode (Power Off), dial "★25259".

■When Public Mode (Power Off) is activated

The setting stays activated until you dial "\text{\text{\chi}}25250" to deactivate Public Mode (Power Off). You cannot deactivate the setting just by turning on the power.

The guidance is played back to the caller telling that you are currently in a place where you should turn off the power.

Then the call is disconnected. When a PushTalk call comes in, no answer is made and the message "Connection failed" appears on the caller's display. For the talk among three or more members, the message to the effect that you do not participate is conveyed to them.

The Public Mode (Power Off) guidance is played back even when you are out of the service area or out of reach of radio waves.

■ Relations between incoming calls during Public Mode (Power Off) and respective services

Service	Responses to	Responses to Incoming
	Incoming Voice Calls	Videophone Calls
Voice Mail	Plays back the Public	Does not play back the
Service	Mode (Power Off)	video guidance for
	guidance, and then the	Public Mode (Power
	call is connected to the	Off), and the call is
	Voice Mail Service	connected to the Voice
	Center.**	Mail Service Center.
Call	Plays back the Public	Does not play back the
Forwarding	Mode (Power Off)	video guidance for
Service	guidance, and then the	Public Mode (Power
	call is forwarded to the	Off), and the call is
	forwarding destination.*	forwarded to the
	Whether the guidance	forwarding destination.
	is played back or not	If the destination does
	depends on the	not support videophone
	guidance setting of Call	calls, the call is
	Forwarding Service. If	disconnected.
	"Plays guidance" is set,	
	plays back the Public	
	Mode (Power Off)	
	guidance. If "Does not	
	play guidance" is set,	
	does not play back the	
	guidance.	
Nuisance	For the call from the	For the call from the
Call	phone number	phone number
Blocking	registered to be	registered to be
Service	rejected, plays back the	rejected, plays back the
	Call Rejection	video guidance for Call
	guidance, and then the	Rejection, and then the
	call is disconnected.	call is disconnected.

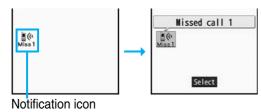
Service	Responses to Incoming Voice Calls	Responses to Incoming Videophone Calls
Caller ID	For the caller without a	For the caller without a
Display	caller ID, plays back	caller ID, plays back
Request	the Caller ID Request	the video guidance for
Service	guidance, and then the	Caller ID Request, and
	call is disconnected.	then the call is
	For the caller with a	disconnected.
	caller ID, plays back	For the caller with a
	the Public Mode	caller ID, plays back
	(Power Off) guidance,	the video guidance for
	and then the call is	Public Mode (Power
	disconnected.	Off), and then the call is
		disconnected.

* When the ring time is set to 0 seconds, the Public Mode (Power Off) guidance is not played back, but Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service works.

<Missed Call> If You could not Answer an **Incoming Call**

When you could not answer calls (Missed calls), the "Notification icon" appears on the Stand-by display. You can check Received Calls by selecting the icon.





- Press (or (CLR) to return to the former display.
- When multiple icons are found, use (to highlight an icon and press ()(Select).
- See page 30 for when the FOMA phone is closed.

<Record Message Setting>



Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer the Call

By activating Record Message, you can play back an answer message to incoming calls and record callers' voice/video messages when you cannot answer them even if you have not signed up for Voice Mail Service. You can record up to five messages for voice calls and up to two messages for videophone calls. Each message can be recorded for up to 20 seconds.

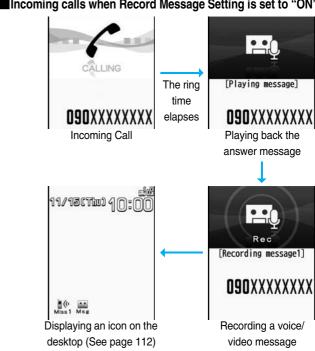
Activate Record Message

- MENU LifeKit Rec. msg/voice memo
 - Record message setting ON or OFF
 - Select an answer message.
 - ◆Press (☑)(Play) to play back the answer message. Press (CLR) to end the demo playback.
 - When "Japanese 1", "Japanese 2", or "English" is set, a beep sounds after playing back the answer message to the other party. If "Voice announce" is set, the beep does not sound.

Enter a ring time (seconds).

- Enter from "000" through "120" in three digits.
- ◆You cannot set the same ring time for Remote Monitoring, Auto Answer Setting and Record Message Setting. Set a different time for each.
- ●While Record Message is activated, " ☐ ~ " ☐ (the number of recorded messages for voice calls) and " [" ~ "[4]" (the number of recorded messages for videophone calls) are displayed.





For videophone calls, the still image set for "Preparing" of "Select image" is displayed on the other party's display while playing back the answer message, and the still image set for "Record message" of "Select image" is displayed while recording.

• To answer a call while the answer message is played back or a voice/video message is recorded, press () (Answer) or **(4**).

For videophone calls, press () (Answer) or to send the image through your camera, or press (MENU) (Subst.) to send a substitute image.

You can answer a call also by pressing the switch on the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option). For videophone calls, the image through your camera is sent to the other party.

- Record Message does not work when "圖" is displayed.
- When Public Mode (Drive Mode) and Record Message are simultaneously activated, the former has priority and the latter does not work.
- The priority order of answer messages is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" "Group setting" "Record message setting".
- If "Voice announce" selected as an answer message is deleted, the answer message will be set to "Japanese 1".
- When Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set at the same time as Record Message, the priority depends on the ring time set for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. To give Record Message priority, set the ring time for Record Message Setting shorter than that for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. Even when you do this, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service will work if there are already five record messages for voice calls and two record messages for videophone
- You cannot receive a call from a third party while a voice/ video message is being recorded. The third party will hear the busy tone.

<Quick Record Message> **Recording Voice/Video** Messages when You cannot **Answer the Call during Ringing**

Even if a call comes in while Record Message is not activated, you can record the caller's voice/video message just for that incoming call.



Manner Mode is also activated.

The caller will hear the answer message and then can leave you a voice/video message.

- Record Message does not work when five messages for voice calls and two messages for videophone calls have already been recorded or when a PushTalk call comes in. Only Manner Mode is set when you operate by pressing | V |
- When "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", you cannot activate Record Message by pressing |▼| with the FOMA phone closed.

<Play/Erase Messages>



<Play/Erase Videophone Messages>

Playing Back/Erasing Record Messages/a Voice Memo/Videophone **Record Messages/Movie Memos**

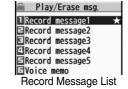
Play Back/Erase Record Messages/ a Voice Memo

MENU LifeKit Rec. msg/voice memo Play/Erase msg.

Select a record message or voice memo.

A beep sounds and playback starts.

 On the Record Message List, recorded items are indicated by



- It is played back at the volume set for "Volume" (earpiece volume).
- When playback ends, a double-beep sounds and the message "Playing" is cleared from the display.
- The date and time the message/memo was recorded are displayed during playback. When a caller's phone number is provided, it is displayed. If the caller is stored in the Phonebook, his/her name is also displayed. However, the name is not displayed and the phone number only is displayed in the following cases:
 - · When you play back a record message from the caller stored as secret data in Normal Mode
 - · When you play back a record message for Number A in B Mode (or vice versa) while using 2in1
- If the caller's phone number is displayed during playback, you can make a voice call to that phone number by pressing (V. phone) to make a videophone call and press P to make a PushTalk

■To play back using |▼

From the Stand-by display, press |▼| to play back the latest record message. When record messages are not recorded, a voice memo is played back.

■To skip to next message

Each time you press |▼| during playback, messages are played back in the following order: the next new record the oldest record message message a voice memo.

■To cancel playback midway

Press () (Stop) or (CLR).

Play Back/Erase Videophone Record Messages/Movie Memos

MENU LifeKit Rec. msg/voice memo ► Play/Erase VP msg. ► Select a videophone record message or movie memo.

- On the Videophone Record Message List, recorded items are indicated by " ".
- It is played back at the same volume of the playback sound of i-motion movies.
- The date and time the message/ memo was recorded are displayed during playback.



■To play back using ▼

From the Stand-by display, press and hold |▼| for at least one second to play back the latest videophone record message. When videophone record messages are not recorded, the latest movie memo is played back.

■To cancel playback midway

Press () () or CLR.

Function Menu of the Record Message List/ Videophone Record Message List

Operation/Explanation	
You can play back a message.	
►YES	
● You can erase a message/memo also by pressing (Erase) during playback.	
You can erase all record messages from the	
Record Message List, and can erase all	
videophone record messages from the	
Videophone Record Message List.	
► YES	
You can erase all movie memos.	
► YES	
You can erase all record messages and a	
voice memo from the Record Message List,	
and can erase all videophone record	
messages and movie memos from the	
Videophone Record Message List.	
► YES	

Using Chara-den

You can send a Chara-den image instead of the image through your camera.

See page 288 for Chara-den images.

Set by Call

You can set a Chara-den image to be sent to the other party for making a videophone call.

Chara-den display/Chara-den List

►[**№**](**V**. phone)

Enter the destination phone number and press $[oxedsymbol{\boxtimes}]$ (V. phone) to make a videophone call.

- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, you can retrieve it selecting from the Search Phonebook display by pressing [].
- You can search for the phone number also from Received Calls by pressing \square or from Redial by pressing ().

Information

• The priority order of substitute images to be sent to the other party is as follows: "Setting by call" "Setting for Phonebook entry" "Group setting" "Select image".

Substitute Image

You can set a Chara-den image for "Substitute image" of "Select image".

- Chara-den display/Chara-den List/Chara-den Recording display [≅ \omega] (FUNC)
 - Substitute image
 - From the Chara-den List, you can set it also by pressing MENU) (Subst.).

Chara-den Setup

You can perform settings for a Chara-den call. These settings are effective only for during a videophone call.

- During a Chara-den call ► (\$\varphi\varphi)(\varphi\text{FUNC})
- - ► Chara-den setup
 - ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Switch	► Select a Chara-den image.
Chara-den	 If you switch Chara-den images, the action mode switches to Whole Action Mode.
Action list	You can display the list for actions that you can operate. • Highlight an action and press (Select) to execute the action. Press (Detail) to check the details of the action. • You can display the Action List also by pressing (X).

Item	Operation/Explanation	
Change action	You can switch the action mode between	
At videophone	Whole Action Mode () and Parts Action	
start-up	Mode ().	
Whole Action	You can switch modes also by pressing	
Mode	□ .	
SW substitute	You can switch a substitute image to be sent	
img.	to the other party to the still image set for	
	"Pre-installed" of "Select image".	
SW org.	You can switch a substitute image to be sent	
subst. img.	to the other party to the still image set for	
	"Original" of "Select image".	

Useful Functions for Videophone Calls

Switching Cameras

At videophone start-up Inside camera

You can switch images to be sent to the other party from through the inside camera to through the outside camera.

- **1** During a videophone call ► (OUT)
 - Press (☐ IN) again to switch to the image through your inside camera.
 - The setting here is effective only for the current videophone call.

Send Substitute Images

You can switch images to be sent to the other party from the image through your camera to the still image or Chara-den image set as the substitute image. See page 288 for Chara-den.

- During a videophone call MENU (Subst.)
 - The substitute image is sent to the other party.
 - "E" is displayed while the still substitute image is being sent, and "[" is displayed if you have set a Chara-den image as a substitute image (during a Chara-den call).
 - Press MENU (Me) again to switch from the substitute image to the image through your camera.

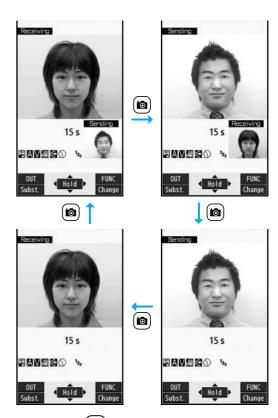
Information

- The priority order of substitute images to be sent to the other party is as follows: "Setting by call" "Setting for Phonebook entry" "Group setting" "Select image". Note that "Setting for Phonebook entry" and "Group setting" are disabled when a videophone call comes in without notifying the caller ID.
- Even when you make a videophone call sending a substitute image, you are charged for the digital communication.

Switch Image Display Positions

You can switch the display locations of the receiving image and the sending image.

During a videophone call, press 🔯 (Change).



Each time you press (☐)(Change), the displays switch.

Zoom

At videophone start-up Wide

You can adjust the magnification for the camera image to be sent to the other party. During a videophone call, the maximum magnification is about 3.3 times for the inside camera and about 5.5 times for the outside camera.

During a videophone call ➤ Use to adjust the magnification.

• The former zoom setting returns when the videophone call ends.

Function Menu during Videophone Call

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
CHG to voice	See page 52.
call	
Photo light	You can turn on the photo light when sending
At videophone	the image through the outside camera to the
start-up	other party.
OFF	► ON or OFF
Talk on BT/	You can set whether to communicate through
Phone	the FOMA phone or a Bluetooth device.
	(See page 352)

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Send DTMF	During a Chara-den call, you can switch to th
tone/	DTMF Transmission Mode that enables you
DTMF tone	to enter the data from the numeric keys and t
OFF	send DTMF (touch-tone signals). You can
	operate it only during a Chara-den call.
	• "Send DTMF tone" is displayed when the mode
	not DTMF Transmission Mode and "DTMF tone
	OFF" is displayed in DTMF Transmission Mode
	● In DTMF Transmission Mode, you cannot
	operate the action of Chara-den images.
	◆The DTMF tone may not be received
	depending on the device of a receiving en
V.phone settings	See page 71.
(Visual	
preference)	
. •	You can adjust the brightness of the camera
(Brightness)	image to be sent to other party to -3 (dark)
At videophone start-up	through +3 (bright).
0	► Brightness ► Select a brightness level.
	Manager all at the contract of the contract
	You can adjust the colors of the camera
•	image to be sent to the other party, to make the colors look more natural.
At videophone start-up	White balance Select an item.
Automatic	Fine weather For talking outdoors in
	fine weather
	Cloudy weather For talking in cloudy
	weather or in the shad
	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white
	weather or in the shad
	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically
•	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera
•	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party.
(Color mode set) At videophone	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party.
(Color mode set) At videophone	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party.
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone.
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode)	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the camera image to be sent clear in
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure tim to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place.
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the camera image to be sent clear in
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure tim to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camer
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus)	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure tim to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camer during a videophone call.
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus) At videophone	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the camera image to be sent clear in a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camer during a videophone call. Focus Close-up or Landscape
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus) At videophone start-up start-up	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camera during a videophone call. Focus Close-up or Landscape The focus for the inside camera is fixed to
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus) At videophone	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure tim to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camer during a videophone call. Focus Close-up or Landscape The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits)
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus) At videophone start-up Landscape	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure tim to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camer during a videophone call. Focus Close-up or Landscape The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits) so you cannot change the setting.
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus) At videophone start-up Landscape Chara-den setup	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the camera image to be sent clear in a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camera during a videophone call. Focus Close-up or Landscape The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits) so you cannot change the setting. See page 69.
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus) At videophone start-up Landscape	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure tim to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camer during a videophone call. Focus Close-up or Landscape The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits) so you cannot change the setting. See page 69. You can select whether to light the display
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus) At videophone start-up Landscape Chara-den setup	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure tim to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camer during a videophone call. Focus Close-up or Landscape The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits) so you cannot change the setting. See page 69. You can select whether to light the display constantly or light for about 15 seconds after
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus) At videophone start-up Landscape Chara-den setup	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the camera image to be sent clear in a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camera during a videophone call. Focus Close-up or Landscape The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits) so you cannot change the setting. See page 69. You can select whether to light the display constantly or light for about 15 seconds afte an operation.
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus) At videophone start-up Landscape Chara-den setup Backlight	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure tim to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camer during a videophone call. Focus Close-up or Landscape The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits so you cannot change the setting. See page 69. You can select whether to light the display constantly or light for about 15 seconds afte an operation. Constant light or 15 seconds light
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus) At videophone start-up Landscape Chara-den setup Backlight	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure tim to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camera during a videophone call. Focus Close-up or Landscape The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits so you cannot change the setting. See page 69. You can select whether to light the display constantly or light for about 15 seconds after an operation. Constant light or 15 seconds light See page 107.
(Color mode set) At videophone start-up Normal V.phone settings (Night mode) At videophone start-up OFF V.phone settings (Focus) At videophone start-up Landscape Chara-den setup Backlight	weather or in the shad Automatic For adjusting white balance automatically Light bulb For talking under incandescent light You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party. Color mode set Select a color tone. You can lengthen the camera's exposure tim to make the camera image to be sent clear is a dark place. Night mode ON or OFF You can set the focus for the outside camer during a videophone call. Focus Close-up or Landscape The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits) so you cannot change the setting. See page 69. You can select whether to light the display constantly or light for about 15 seconds afte an operation. Constant light or 15 seconds light

<Hands-free with Videophone> Setting Videophone Hands-free

You can set whether to switch to Hands-free automatically for when a videophone call starts.

- Settings Videophone
 Hands-free w/ V. phone ON or OFF
 - See page 60 for the operation while Hands-free is activated and how to switch to Hands-free.

<Visual Preference> Setting Image Quality for Videophone Calls

You can set the quality of both the receiving image and sending image on the display.

- Settings ➤ Videophone
 ➤ Visual preference ➤ Select an image quality.
 - "Prefer motion spd" is effective for moving images.
 When there is little motion, the quality becomes better if you set to "Prefer img qual".
 - If you operate from the Function menu during a videophone call, the setting is effective only for the current videophone call.

Information

• If the radio wave conditions weaken during a videophone call, the image may appear like a mosaic.

Select Image> Changing Image Displays for Videophone Calls

You can set an image to be sent to the other party instead of the camera image.

Select an item.

On hold Sets an image for during answer-hold (On hold).

Holding Sets an image for while a call is on hold (Holding).

Substitute image

.....Sets a substitute image (still image or Chara-den) for when a camera is off.

Record message

......Sets an image while recording a record message.

Preparing. . . Sets an image for while playing back an answer message.

Movie memo

..... Sets an image for while recording a movie memo.

Select an image.

Pre-installed . . . For sending a pre-installed still image to the other party.

Original For sending an appropriate message with a still image stored using "Set display".

Chara-den For sending a Chara-den image selected by "Substitute image". (See page 69)

(Displayed only when "Substitute image" has been selected in step 1.)

- Press (☐) (☐ Play☐) to play back a demo to check the still image or Chara-den image.
- To change the setting of "Original" or "Chara-den", press (FUNC), select "Change setting", then select a still image or Chara-den image. If you have selected "Original", select a still image after selecting a folder. See "Set display" for settable still images.

Information

 Even if you delete the still image selected from "Original", that still image is displayed to the other party. To change, set by "Change setting" or "Set display".

Set by Call

You can set an image to be sent to the other party for making a videophone call.

Enter a phone number

bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

- 2 (FUNC) ➤ Select image
 ► Me or Chara-den
 - The setting is completed when you select "Me".
 - To cancel the setting by call, select "Release". The setting is completed.
- Select a Chara-den image.

If a videophone call cannot be connected, it will be automatically redialed as a voice call.

Settings Videophone
Voice call auto redial ON or OFF

Information

 The charges for calls once switched to voice calls are billed at the rates for the voice calls.

Information

• Voice Call Auto Redial does not work when a videophone call cannot be connected such as when the line is busy or the other party's phone is in Public Mode (Drive Mode). However, Voice Call Auto Redial works when you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support the videophone function.

Notify Switchable Mode> Setting for Switching between a Voice Call and a Videophone Call

You can let the other party know that your FOMA phone can switch between a voice call and videophone call. This function is set to "Indication ON" at the time of contract. When "Notify switchable mode" is set to "Indication ON", the caller can switch between the videophone call and voice call.

 You cannot operate "Notify switchable mode" when you are out of the service area or radio waves do not reach, or during a call.

Settings Videophone
Notify switchable mode

▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation	
Indication ON	► YES ► OK	
Indication OFF	► YES ► OK	
Check indication	You can check the setting of the function.	

<Videophone while Packet> Selecting Response to Incoming Videophone Calls during i-mode

Settings Incoming call
V-phone while packet Select an item.

V-phone priority

. . . Shows the Videophone Call Receiving display. When you answer the videophone call, packet communication is disconnected.

Packet downld priority

. . .Rejects the videophone call and continues the communication.

V-phone answerphone

. . . Connects the incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail Service Center.

Call forwarding

. . . Forwards the incoming videophone call to the forwarding destination.

Information

• If you have not signed up for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, "Packet downld priority" works even if you set to "V-phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding".

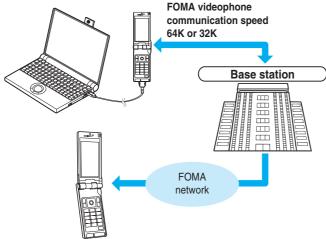
Connecting FOMA Phone to External Devices to Use Videophone Function

You can operate your FOMA phone from an external device such as your personal computer for making or receiving videophone calls by connecting them using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option). To use this function, you need to install a videophone application program on a dedicated external device or personal computer, and further, you need to prepare equipment (commercial item) such as an earphone/microphone or USB compatible web camera.

- For operating environments for a videophone application program and how to set or operate it, refer to the instruction manual or other literature for an external device.
- ●You can use "ドコモテレビ電話ソフト (DoCoMo Videophone Software)" for the application program that supports this function. Download it from the DoCoMo Videophone Software web site.

(For details such as operating environment for the personal computers, refer to the support web page.)

http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/ (Japanese only)



You cannot make a videophone call at 32 kbps communication speed.

Information

- You cannot make a videophone call from the external device during a voice call.
- When you have signed up for Call Waiting Service, an incoming videophone call from an external device during a voice call is recorded as a missed call in Received Calls. The same applies for an incoming voice call, videophone call, and 64 data communication during a videophone call from an external device.

<Remote Monitoring> Checking inside the Room when You are Out

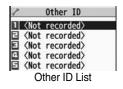
You can use the inside camera of the FOMA phone as a monitoring camera to observe the remote location from a phone that has the videophone function based on 3G-324M. While "Remote monitoring" is set to "ON", the FOMA phone automatically starts Remote Monitoring when it receives a videophone call from a phone number stored as "Other ID" of "Remote monitoring". (The FOMA phone needs to be set to Normal Style.)

Settings Videophone

- Remote monitoring
- ► Enter your Terminal Security Code.
- ◆To release Remote Monitoring, select "Set", then select "OFF".

Other ID < Not recorded> Enter a phone number.

- To change, select the stored phone number.
- You can store up to five phone numbers that can enter up to 26 digits by using numerals, #, ★, or +.



• To return to the setting display for Remote Monitoring, press CLR from the Other ID List after storing phone number.

Ring time Enter a ring time (seconds).

- You can enter the time from "003" through "120" in three digits until Remote Monitoring starts after receiving a videophone call.
- You cannot set the same ring time for Remote Monitoring, Auto Answer Setting and Record Message Setting. Set a different time for each.

/ Set ► ON

- When receiving videophone calls from the phone numbers stored as "Other ID", the FOMA phone automatically answers to start Remote Monitoring after the ring time elapses.
- You cannot set to "ON" in Manner Mode.

Function Menu of the Other ID List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Look-up	You can call up a phone number in the
address	Phonebook, Dialed Calls, or Received Calls
	to enter it.
	➤ Select an item.
	Phonebook Call up a Phonebook
	entry and select a phone number.
	Dialed calls Highlight a phone number
	and press 🔘 (Select).
	Received calls Highlight a phone number
	and press (Select).
Delete this	►YES

Function menu		Operation/Explanation
Delete all	► VFS	

Information

<Delete this> <Delete all>

 If you delete all phone numbers stored as "Other ID", "Remote monitoring" is set to "OFF".

Perform Remote Monitoring

Make a videophone call from a stored phone number.

After the ring time set for "Remote monitoring" elapses, Remote Monitoring automatically starts.

- The image through the receiving end's camera appears on the display and the sound comes out of the speaker.
- You cannot set Voice-only Remote Monitoring.
- Make a videophone call notifying your caller ID. If the caller ID is not notified, Remote Monitoring will not start and the call will be handled as an ordinary incoming videophone call.
- Remote Monitoring ends when the calling end or receiving end presses .

■For answering a videophone call without starting Remote Monitoring at the receiving end

Press ()(Answer) or before the FOMA phone answers a videophone call automatically. If you press (Subst.), the videophone call starts sending the substitute image to the other party.

- When a remote monitoring call comes in, "Setting when opened" is disabled.
- If you press when a remote monitoring call comes in, the call will be cut and Remote Monitoring will not start.

Information

- When your FOMA phone is used for the receiving end, an image through the caller's camera appears, and sound comes out. (You cannot switch to a substitute image.)
- Remote Monitoring does not start during Manner Mode and Public Mode (Drive Mode). However, it starts even during Lock All.
- When Remote Monitoring is set to "ON" and a videophone call comes in from the phone number set as "Other ID", Remote Monitoring starts after the set ring time, even when "Ring time", "Auto answer setting", or "Record message setting" is set and regardless of their ring times.
- When Remote Monitoring is not performed, it is recorded in Received Calls as a missed videophone call.
- If the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected when a remote monitoring call comes in, the ring tone will sound from both the earphone and the speaker, even when "Headset usage setting" is set to "Headset only".

Information

- The ring tone for Remote Monitoring sounds. (You cannot change the ring tone for Remote Monitoring.)
 The ring tone sounds at the volume set for "Videophone" of "Ring volume", but at "Level 2" if you have set "Step", "Level 1" or below.
- The flickering color is "Gradation", and its flickering pattern is "Standard", regardless of the Illumination setting.
- You cannot put incoming remote monitoring calls on answer-hold (On Hold).
- If you set both Call Forwarding Service and Remote Monitoring, and give priority to Remote Monitoring, set its ring time shorter than that for Call Forwarding Service.
- To use Call Forwarding Service for Remote Monitoring, store the phone number of dialing side as "Other ID" and set a 3G-324M videophone as the forwarding destination.
- You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA phone to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

PushTalk

What is PushTalk?	76
Making a PushTalk Call	76
Adding a Member during PushTalk Communication	77
Receiving a PushTalk Call	78
Storing in PushTalk Phonebook	79
Making a PushTalk Call Using PushTalk Phonebook	80
Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries Delete from PushTalk Phonebook	80
Making Full Use of PushTalk Phonebook	81
Setting PushTalk Calling/Receiving	81

What is PushTalk?

You can communicate with multiple persons (up to five persons including yourself); press the PushTalk key to access the PushTalk Phonebook, select the persons you want to talk with, and press the PushTalk key. You are charged a PushTalk communication fee each time you press (talk) the PushTalk key.

 For details on PushTalk or compatible models, refer to DoCoMo web page or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

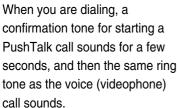
■PushTalkPlus

This service enables you to have a PushTalk call with up to 20 persons including you. You can use the shared Phonebook on the network, and can check the members for their status, thus PushTalk becomes more useful.

- *You need to subscribe separately.
- For details such as how to operate, refer to the booklet which is supplied at subscription.

Making a PushTalk Call

Enter the other party's phone number



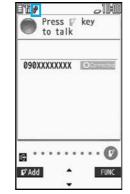
 You can make a group call to multiple persons using the PushTalk Phonebook. (See page 79 and page 80)



When the other party answers, talk while pressing [F].

When the other party answers, a confirmation tone for starting communication sounds.

- " " blinks during dialing and lights during communication.
- When you get the talker's right, the talker's right obtained tone sounds. The other party hears your voice only while you are pressing and having the talker's right. When you release



- (P), the talker's right is released, and a confirmation tone sounds.
- You cannot get the talker's right and an error tone sounds even if you press when another member has it.

Press to end the communication after talking.

A tone to notify the disconnection of communication sounds at the other end.

•When the call you made is a group call, the PushTalk communication itself continues even if you press and the icon indicating that you are not participating appears on each member's display and a confirmation tone sounds. However, when all the members exit, the PushTalk communication itself ends.

Information

- The talker is charged a communication fee from when he/ she presses

 and the talker's right obtained tone sounds.
- You cannot make emergency calls at 110/119/118 from PushTalk.
- The duration you can talk per talker's right is limited. The talker's right release notice tone sounds before the limited time arrives, and the talker's right is released. In addition, the PushTalk communication itself ends when no one gets the talker's right in a certain period of time.
- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by "Hands-free w/ PushTalk" (See page 81). However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk".
- The FOMA phone works according to "Setting when folded" if you close it during communication. You can set also by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Set. when folded". (See page 63)
- Whether to notify others of your phone number when you make PushTalk calls follows the setting for "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" (see page 47). However, when you set "Notify caller ID" from the Function menu for dialing, or when "Notify"/"Not notify" is displayed in the detailed Redial/Dialed Call/Received Call display, each of those settings will work.
- When you make a PushTalk call with your phone number notified, your phone number as well as all members' phone numbers are notified to all members including added members. When you make the PushTalk call without notifying your phone number, "User unset" appears in the caller's and member's fields on the displays of all the members including added members. Your phone number is very important information, so take the utmost care to notify it to others.
- If you make a PushTalk call during i-mode communication, the i-mode communication is disconnected.
- •You cannot use PushTalk by Number B of 2in1.

■ Making/Receiving a PushTalk group call

You can use the PushTalk Phonebook or Redial/Dialed Calls/
Received Calls to communicate with multiple members.
While making or receiving a PushTalk group call, the group name and the members in the group are displayed.

Press to confirm other members. When a call is received with the other party's phone number not provided, "User unset" is displayed.

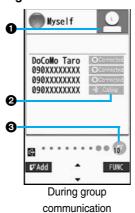
■ Re-participating or participating midway in PushTalk communication

Use Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls to make a PushTalk call so long as the PushTalk communication continues among other members.

 If the PushTalk communication has already been finished, your call is dialed as a new PushTalk call.

Display while dialing/communicating

●The phone number of the member who has the talker's right is displayed, and the state of the talker's right is displayed in color of the round icon at the upper left. When the name of that member, phone number, and image are stored in the Phonebook, his/her name and image are displayed. However, when you cannot receive a member's information correctly, "?" is displayed.



When the FOMA phone is closed, the phone number (name) of the member who has the talker's right is displayed on the Private window.

Color of the round icon at the upper left	State of the talker's rights
Blue	Calling
Green	You can get the talker's right.
Blinking in green	You have the talker's right.
Blinking in yellow	Another member has the talker's right.
	The talker's right will be released
Blinking in	automatically in a few seconds because
green and red	it has long been retained (A release notice tone sounds).

2The state of members is shown by icons during dialing or communicating.

(Characters other than shown below might appear.)

Icon	State of members
-) Calling *	Calling
○ Connected	Has participated in the PushTalk call.
★ Disconnected **	Does not answer, has ended the PushTalk call, out of the service area, or the power is off.
← Driving *	Has activated Public Mode (Drive Mode).

- Displayed only for the PushTalk communication among three or more members.
- The number of times you have got the talker's right is the total of the number of and the number shown in When 999 times are exceeded, the counting is reset to 0.

Adding a Member during PushTalk Communication

You can make a PushTalk call to another member during PushTalk communication and add that member to the communication.

You can add a person to the members by accessing the PushTalk Phonebook, Phonebook, or Dialed Calls/ Received Calls, or by directly entering a phone number. You can add up to five members (including yourself), and can repeat adding up to that number.

- Members can be added from the calling end only.
- You can add even the members who use the PushTalk compatible models which do not have this function.
- If you have already made a call to four members, you cannot add a new member though you can call up a member who has exited the call again.
- The added members are not stored in Redial/Dialed Calls.

During PushTalk communication ▶ ☑ (PAdd) ➤ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation	
View	You can call up a PushTalk Phonebook entry	
PushTalk PB	to make a PushTalk call. (See page 80)	
	Instead of pressing P, press (Dial) to	
	call.	
	● Press (to switch between the PushTalk	
	Phonebook List and PushTalk Group List.	
View	You can call up a Phonebook entry to make a	
phonebook	PushTalk call.	
	► Call up a Phonebook entry ► Highlight a	
	phone number and press (Dial).	
Direct input	You can enter a phone number to make a	
	PushTalk call.	
	► Enter a phone number ► (☐ Dial)	
View call	You can call up Dialed Calls/Received Calls	
records	to make a PushTalk call.	
	➤ Dialed calls or Received calls	
	➤ Select a record ➤ Select a phone number	
	► [Dial)	

- The caller cannot add members if he/she uses a PushTalk compatible model which does not have this function.
- For a member who uses a PushTalk compatible model which does not have this function, the members added during PushTalk communication are not shown and a confirmation tone does not sound.

Receiving a PushTalk Call

- When a PushTalk call comes in, "PushTalk call" is displayed, the ring tone sounds, and the Call/Charging indicator flickers.
 - "PushTalk group call" is displayed for an incoming group call.
 - To reject a call, press

 (FUNC) during ringing and select "Call rejection".

 You can reject the call also by pressing (2).



Press to answer a PushTalk call Talk while pressing .

- ●You can answer also by pressing ② or (Answer) instead of pressing ②. You can answer also by pressing ③ with the FOMA phone closed.
- ●When you get talker's right, the talker's right obtained tone is played back. The other party hears your voice only while you are pressing

 and having the talker's right. When you release

 the talker's right is the talker's right is talker's right.



- nas it."Setting when opened" and "Record message setting" become invalid.

Press to end the communication after talking.

A tone for confirming the end of communication sounds at the other end.

•When the call you received is a group call, the PushTalk communication itself continues even if you press and the icon indicating that you are not participating appears on each member's display and a confirmation tone sounds. However, when all the members exit, the PushTalk communication itself ends.

Information

- The duration you can talk per talker's right is limited. The talker's right release notice tone sounds before the limited time arrives, and the talker's right is released. In addition, the PushTalk communication itself ends when no one gets the talker's right in a certain period of time.

- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by "Hands-free w/ PushTalk" (see page 81). However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk".
- The FOMA phone works according to "Setting when folded" if you close it during communication. You can set also by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Set. when folded". (See page 63)
- You cannot use "On hold" or "Holding" function for PushTalk.
- A PushTalk call that comes in during a voice call, a PushTalk call that comes in during Public Mode (Drive Mode), and a voice call (when "PushTalk arrival act" is set to other than "Answer"), a videophone call, data communication, or a PushTalk call that comes in during PushTalk communication are recorded as missed calls in Received Calls.
- A PushTalk call that comes in during a videophone call or during data communication does not work and is not recorded in Received Calls.
- After you finish PushTalk communication or when you
 cannot answer to a PushTalk call, you can use a received
 call record to make a PushTalk call and to re-participate or
 participate midway in the communication so long as the
 PushTalk communication continues among other members.
 If the PushTalk communication among other members has
 already been finished, your call is dialed as a new PushTalk
 call.
- When a caller adds members during PushTalk communication, the added members are not stored in Received Calls.
- See page 82 for how to respond to the PushTalk call during i-mode communication.
- When the caller is defined as the one to be rejected, the call is rejected. The setting of call rejection applies to the setting for both voice calls and videophone calls.

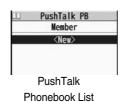
<Store in PushTalk Phonebook> Storing in PushTalk Phonebook

From the items stored in a FOMA phone's Phonebook entry, you need to store a name (reading) and a phone number in the PushTalk Phonebook. You can store up to 1,000 entries in the PushTalk Phonebook.



▶ Do the following operations.

- You can store also by selecting <New>.
- If you store multiple phone numbers from a Phonebook entry, the phone number previously stored in the



PushTalk Phonebook is overwritten.

PushTalk Phonebook is overwritten.	
Item	Operation/Explanation
View phonebook	You can access an entry already stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook and store it in the PushTalk Phonebook. Call up a Phonebook entry Select a phone number YES
Direct input	You can store the entry in the PushTalk Phonebook after storing it in the FOMA phone's Phonebook. Phone Select a storing method. New Go to step 2 on page 84. Add Go to step 3 of "Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook" on page 88. When multiple phone numbers are stored in a Phonebook entry, press (Finish) and select the phone number you want to store in the PushTalk Phonebook. The " "mark is added to the phone number that has already been stored in the PushTalk Phonebook.
View call records	You can access a dialed call record or received call record to store it in the PushTalk Phonebook. You cannot store in the PushTalk Phonebook from the dialed/received call record of the party who is not stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook. Dialed calls or Received calls Select a record Select a phone number YES

Information

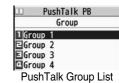
 In the PushTalk Phonebook, you cannot store the Phonebook entries set to B by Phonebook 2in1 Setting.

Store in Group

You can store PushTalk Phonebook entries in groups. You can store up to 19 members per group and create up to 10 groups.

PushTalk Phonebook List

● Press (Member) to show the PushTalk Phonebook List.



Select a group MENU (Add)

▶ Put a check mark for members to be stored





 You can store also by selecting <Edit group members> from the Group Member List.

Function Menu of the Group Member Selection Display

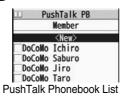
Operation/Explanation
You can display only members applied with a
check mark.
● Press () (Store) to store the members to
the group.
Select a search method.
Reading? See page 89.
Group? See page 89.
Select a member.
You can display the Group Member Selection display with the searched members selected.

Making a PushTalk Call Using **PushTalk Phonebook**

You can make a group call to up to four members using the PushTalk Phonebook or PushTalk group.

PushTalk Phonebook List ► Put a check mark for members you want to make a call to ▶ P or [M](PDial)

- Press (Group) to show the PushTalk Group List.
- When you do not check any members, the call is made to the highlighted member.



Make a Call from PushTalk Group

- PushTalk Group List Select a group.
 - Select a group and press P or (☑)(PDial) to make a call to all the members in the group.
 - Press (Member) to show the PushTalk Phonebook List.

PushTalk PB
Group
1 Group 1
□Group 2
EGroup 3
Group 4
PushTalk Group List

- Put a check mark for members you want to make a call to ▶ P or (☑)(PDial)
 - When you do not check any members, the call is made to the highlighted member.



Information

 When five or more members are stored in a group, you cannot make a call to all the members by selecting the group.

< Delete from PushTalk Phonebook> **Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries**

PushTalk Phonebook List ► (\$\overline{\mathbb{E}}\overline{\mathbb{C}}\) (FUNC)



- DEL from P-Talk PB
- ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Delete this	Select a deleting method.
	DEL from P-Talk PB
	Deletes an entry in the PushTalk
	Phonebook only. Does not delete the
	entry in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.
	DEL from all PBs
	Deletes an entry in both the PushTalk
	Phonebook and FOMA phone's
	Phonebook.
	YES
Delete all	► Enter your Terminal Security Code ➤ YES
	●The FOMA phone's Phonebook entries are
	not deleted.

Delete from PushTalk Group

PushTalk Group List > (\$\varphi\)(\(\begin{array}{c} \text{FUNC}\) **▶ DEL from PT group ► YES**

Delete Group Members

- Group Member List ► (FUNC)
 - ▶ DEL group members
 - ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Delete this	▶YES
Delete all	► Enter your Terminal Security Code ➤ YES

Information

• Even when you delete PushTalk groups or group members, the PushTalk Phonebook entries and FOMA phone's Phonebook entries are not deleted.

Making Full Use of PushTalk Phonebook

Function Menu of the PushTalk Phonebook List/ PushTalk Group List/Group Member List

Franchis	On any time (Francisco
Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Members to call	When the PushTalk Phonebook List or Group Member List is displayed, you can display the checked members only. Press or (PDIal) to make a PushTalk call. Press (FUNC) to select "Notify caller ID" and then you can select whether to notify your phone number. When "Cancel prefix" is selected, the FOMA phone works according to the setting by "Caller ID notification".
Search	Select a search method.
PushTalk PB	Reading? See page 89.
[Phonebook	Group? See page 89.
List only]	Select a member.
	You can display the PushTalk Phonebook List
	with the searched members selected.
Store in	See page 79.
P-Talk PB	
[Phonebook	
List only]	
DEL from	See page 80.
P-Talk PB [Phonebook	
List only]	
Edit group	You can edit the members in the group.
members	Go to step 2 on page 79.
[Group List/	
Member List]	
Edit group	Enter a group name.
name	You can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32
[Group List only]	·
DEL from PT	See page 80.
group List only	
[Group List only]	
DEL group	See page 80.
members [Member List only]	
[Member List only]	Coo pogo 01
Auto answer set.	See page 81.
Ring time	See page 81.
setting	
Hands-Free	See page 81.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Set. when	See page 63.
folded	
i-mode arrival	See page 82.
act	
P-Talk arrival	See page 81.
act	
Network	You can connect to the network to use
connection	PushTalkPlus. This is available only when
	you have singed up for PushTalkPlus.
	(See page 76)

Setting PushTalk Calling/Receiving

Settings PushTalk
Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation	
Auto answer	Select an item.	
setting	ON Automatically answers immediately	
	after receiving regardless of "Ring	
	time setting".	
	OFF Does not answer automatically.	
Ring time	► Enter a ring time (seconds).	
setting	● Enter two digits from "01" through "60".	
	• "Disconnected" is displayed at the other end	
	after the ring time has elapsed.	
Hands-free w/	You can set whether to hear the other party's	
PushTalk	voice from the speaker or from the earpiece	
	for when PushTalk communication starts.	
	► ON or OFF	
	● See page 60 for how the FOMA phone	
	works while Hands-free is activated and	
	how to switch to Hands-free during	
	communication.	
PushTalk	Select an item.	
arrival act	Voice mail	
	Connects an incoming voice call to the	
	Voice Mail Service Center.	
	Call forwarding	
	Forwards an incoming voice call to the	
	forwarding destination.	
	Call rejection	
	Rejects an incoming voice call and does	
	not answer.	
	Answer	
	Shows the Voice Call Receiving display.	

Information

<Auto answer setting>

- When you set to "ON", calls are automatically answered even when the FOMA phone is closed regardless of "Setting when folded".
- When you set to "ON", calls are automatically answered after switching to Hands-free regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk".
- When you set to "ON", the ring tone, vibrator, Call/Charging indicator, and backlight do not work. Calls are not automatically answered during Manner Mode.
- Even when "ON" is set, Hands-free is deactivated if you open the FOMA phone after you answer a call with the FOMA phone closed.

<PushTalk arrival act>

If you press for an incoming voice call while "Answer" is set, the Call Receiving display appears after you finish the PushTalk communication, and then you can answer the voice call. To continue the PushTalk communication, press [FUNC]) and select "Call rejection", "Call forwarding", or "Voice mail".

i-mode Arrival Act

You can set whether to show the PushTalk Call Receiving display when a PushTalk call comes in during i-mode communication.

i-mode settings ➤ i-mode arrival act ➤ Select an item.

PushTalk preferred

...Ends i-mode communication and brings up the PushTalk Call Receiving display.

i-mode preferred

...Rejects receiving a PushTalk call and continues i-mode communication. The call is not recorded in Received Calls.

Phonebook

84
84
87
88
89
90
91
91
91
93
93
95

Phonebooks Available for FOMA Phone

You can use two types of Phonebook, namely the Phonebook in the FOMA phone itself, and the Phonebook on the UIM.

Use them fully for Phonebook management.

			FOMA phone	UIM
Number of entries		er of entries	1,000 entries	50 entries
		Name (Reading)		
		Group	19 groups	10 groups
		Phone number	4 phone	1 phone
			numbers	number
		Phone number icon		×
		Mail address	3 mail	1 mail
	tem		addresses	address
	Basic item	Mail address icon		×
	Ba	Address		×
		Location information		×
		Birthday		×
		Memo		×
		Image	100 images	×
Contents of Phonebook		Memory No.	From 000 to 999	×
neb		Ring tone		
Ph		Vibrator		
s of		Illumination		
teut	_	Picture		
ပ်	Setting item	Chara-den	100	
	ing		Chara-den	×
	Set		images	
		Mail ring tone		
		Mail vibrator		
		Mail illumination		
		Answer message		
		Restrict dialing		
	Restrictions	Call rejection		
	itric	Call acceptance		×
	Res	Call forwarding		
		Voice mail		
		cret code		×
		orage in Secret Mode or		×
	Secret Data Only			. •

		FOMA phone	UIM
	Name		
	Ring tone		
	Vibrator	1	
Contents of Group	Illumination	1	
of G	Picture	1	
uts	Chara-den	1	×
onte	Mail ring tone	1	
0	Mail vibrator	1	
	Mail illumination	1	
	Answer message	1	

- : Can be stored.
- x: Cannot be stored.
- You can set your UIM into another FOMA phone and use the UIM Phonebook entries.

<Add to Phonebook> Storing Phonebook Entries

You can store Phonebook entries in the FOMA phone (Phone) or on the UIM.

- The Edit Name display appears. Go to step 2 and enter a name.
- Do the following operations.





For the FOMA phone

For the UIM

• You can press to switch between the "Basic item" tab and "Settings" tab on the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

Item	Operation/Explanation
N	You can enter the name of the person or
<name></name>	company in kanji, hiragana, katakana,
	alphabetic characters, or numerals.
	► Enter a name.
	● For the FOMA phone, you can enter up to
	16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters. You
	can enter pictographs and symbols as well.
	● For the UIM, you can enter up to 10 full-pitch
	characters/21 half-pitch alphanumeric
	characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters
	cannot be entered.) When the entry contains
	both full-pitch and half-pitch characters, you can
	store up to 10 characters from the beginning
	regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters.

Item	Operation/Explanation
R <reading></reading>	You can enter the reading in half-pitch katakana, alphabetic characters, or numerals. Enter a reading. For the FOMA phone, you can enter up to
	32 half-pitch characters. You can enter half-pitch symbols as well. • For the UIM, you can enter up to 12 full-pitch characters/25 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters cannot be entered.) When the entry contains both full-pitch and half-pitch characters, you can store up to 12
	characters from the beginning regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters. If the displayed reading is acceptable, you do not need to edit it. However, depending on the characters entered for names or entering method, they are not reflected in the reading.
	● If you enter "ゎ (reduced size)" or "ヮ (reduced size)" for a name, "ワ (half-pitch, regular size)" (for the FOMA phone) and "ヮ (regular size)" (for the UIM) are displayed in the reading field.
GR <group></group>	In the FOMA phone, 19 groups are available. On the UIM, 10 groups are available. Select a group. When the storage is completed with no group selected, the Phonebook entry is stored in "No setting".

Item	Operation/Explanation
否	You can store up to four phone numbers per
<phone< th=""><th>Phonebook entry in the FOMA phone. You</th></phone<>	Phonebook entry in the FOMA phone. You
number>	can set an icon for each phone number to
	categorize mobile phone numbers, office
	phone numbers, and so on.
	You can store only one phone number per
	Phonebook entry on the UIM.
	► Enter a phone number.
	●Enter from the city code for the phone
	numbers.
	●You can enter up to 26 digits. However, you
	can enter up to 20 digits for blue UIMs.
	◆Press and hold
	to insert a pause (p) into the phone number
	you store. However, you cannot insert the
	pause (p) to the beginning of phone number or
	insert it consecutively. The pause (p) inserted
	to the end of phone number is not stored.
	• If you insert "X" in the middle of a phone
	number, you cannot make a call. However,
	the phone number is recorded in Redial or
	Dialed Calls.
	You can store the phone number which
	includes "#" such as that for information
	service as well.
	Select an icon.
	• If you have stored a phone number in the
	FOMA phone, another " < Phone number>"
	will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook display.
	To store another phone number, select "
	<phone number="">".</phone>
\square	You can store up to three mail addresses per
<mail address=""></mail>	Phonebook entry in the FOMA phone. You
	can set an icon for each mail address to
	categorize mobile phone addresses, home
	addresses, and so on.
	You can store only one mail address per
	Phonebook entry on the UIM.
	► Enter a mail address.
	●The mail address can consist of up to 50
	half-pitch alphabets, numerals or symbol
	characters.
	●When the mail address is "phone
	number@docomo.ne.jp", store the phone
	number only.
	• For the FOMA phone, you can set a secret
	code as well. (See page 93)
	, , ,
	Select an icon.
	• If you have stored a mail address in the
	FOMA phone, another " < Mail address>"
	will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook
	display. To store another mail address

display. To store another mail address, select " < Mail address>".

Item	Operation/Explanation	
item	Enter a ZIP code	
<address></address>	Enter a postal address.	
	You can enter up to 7 digits for the zip code.	
	You can enter up to 50 full-pitch/100	
	half-pitch characters for the postal address.	
	Further, you can enter pictographs as well.	
	●You cannot enter "¬" or "-" (hyphen) in the	
	zip code.	
	Select an item.	
<location< th=""><th>By position loc.</th></location<>	By position loc.	
information>	Measures the current location and store	
	the location information. After checking	
	the location information, press	
	(<u>Set</u>).	
	From loc. history	
	Select a location information detail from	
	Location History and store it.	
	Attach from image	
	Stores the location information from an	
	image. Select a folder, then the image.To delete the stored location information,	
	select "Delete location info".	
	● When you press (■ Use) during	
	measuring the current location, the	
	confirmation display appears asking	
	whether to display the result obtained so far	
	from the location information.	
	 To cancel measuring the current location, 	
	press (CLR) or (M)(Cancel).	
	● Press (Retry) from the confirmation	
	display for the location information to restart	
	measuring in "Quality mode".	
	► Enter a birthday.	
<birthday></birthday>	• You can enter the birthday from January 1,	
	1800 through December 31, 2099.	
	► Enter a memo.	
<memo></memo>	● You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200	
	half-pitch characters. Further, you can enter	
	pictographs as well.	

Item	Operation/Explanation
<lmage></lmage>	The stored still image is displayed when you call up the Phonebook entry.
	Select an item. Select image
	You can store a still image in Data Box.
	Shoot image
	You can store the shot still image. Perform step 2 through step 3 of "Shoot a Still Image" on page 139. To release the stored still image, select "Release image".
	 The size of a still image you can store is Stand-by (480 x 854) or smaller and up to 300 Kbytes in JPEG format or GIF format. If you store a still image larger than 72 x 54
	dots, it is displayed shrunk on the detailed Phonebook display.
	 If you store a still image larger than 240 x 180 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the Call Receiving display.
	●When "Disp. PH-book image" is set to "ON",
	the stored still image is displayed for an
	incoming call. However, when another
	image is stored in the "Picture" field, that image is preferentially displayed for the
	incoming call.
NO	Enter a memory number.
NO <memory no.=""></memory>	•Enter a three-digit number of "000" through "999".
	●The lowest empty memory number "010"
	through "999" is entered in advance.
	If "010" through "999" are all occupied, the
	lowest empty memory number from "000" through "009" is entered.
⊢	You can set a ring tone for when a voice call
<ring tone=""></ring>	or videophone call comes in from the person
J	stored in the Phonebook.
	➤ Select ring tone
	Go to step 2 on page 98.
	●To release the stored ring tone, select "Release ring tone".
<u>}</u> □ {	You can set a vibration pattern for when a
<vibrator></vibrator>	voice call or videophone call comes in from
	the person stored in the Phonebook.
	Select vibrator
	Select a vibration pattern.To release the stored vibrator, select
	"Release vibrator".

Item	Operation/Explanation
F †	You can set an illumination color for when a
	voice call or videophone call comes in from
	the person stored in the Phonebook.
	➤ Select illumination ➤ Select a color.
	●To release the stored illumination, select
	"Release illumination".
• L201	Version of the least to the state of the
	You can set an image to be displayed for
<picture></picture>	when a call comes in from the person stored
	in the Phonebook.
	➤ Select picture ➤ Select a type of image
	➤ Select a folder ➤ Select an image.
	●To release the stored image, select
	"Release picture".
U	The stored Chara-den image is displayed as a
<chara-den></chara-den>	substitute image for videophone calls with the
Condid don's	person stored in the Phonebook.
	Select Chara-den
	Select a Chara-den image.
	•To release the stored Chara-den image,
	select "Release Chara-den".
▽	You can set a ring tone for when a mail
<mail ring<="" th=""><th>message comes in from the person stored in</th></mail>	message comes in from the person stored in
tone>	the Phonebook.
	➤ Select ring tone
	Go to step 2 on page 98.
	 To release the stored mail ring tone, select
	"Release ring tone".
<u>}</u> ⊠{	You can set a vibration pattern for when a
<mail< th=""><th>mail message comes in from the person</th></mail<>	mail message comes in from the person
vibrator>	stored in the Phonebook.
	➤ Select vibrator
	➤ Select a vibration pattern.
	●To release the stored mail vibrator, select
	"Release vibrator".
S	You can set an illumination color for when a
<mail< th=""><th>mail message comes in from the person</th></mail<>	mail message comes in from the person
illumination>	stored in the Phonebook.
ammadon>	Select illumination Select a color.
	•To release the stored mail illumination,
	select "Release illumination".
E	You can set an answer message for Record
<answer< th=""><th>Message by Phonebook entry.</th></answer<>	Message by Phonebook entry.
message>	➤ Select answer message
	➤ Select an answer message.
	•To release the stored answer message,
	select "Release answer message".
	22.30t 1.0.0000 anonor moodago .
? Press	(Finish).

● If you have not entered any name, "Finish" is not displayed and you cannot store the entry.

■The Phonebook entries while editing When the low battery alarm sounds

The Phonebook entry you are editing is saved automatically. The confirmation display appears asking whether to resume editing when you continue editing after charging the battery or when you operate step 1 on page 84 and select the storage location for the interrupted Phonebook entry after changing to a charged battery.

Recall . . . You can resume editing the Phonebook entry. New. You can edit a new Phonebook entry. In this case, the interrupted data is retained. If you execute "Add to phonebook" after storing the new Phonebook entry, the confirmation display appears again.

- •Only the most recently interrupted entry is retained.
- If you resume editing the data but then cancel editing without storing it, that data will be abandoned. Once you recall the data, be sure to store it.

If you receive a call or mail

You can respond it leaving the edited data as it is, thanks to the Multitask function.

To return to the Phonebook Edit display, press and hold (MULTI) for at least one second to switch the menu. You can return to the Phonebook Edit display also by ending the call or mail function.

Storing Displayed Phone Number/ Mail Address in Phonebook

You can store the displayed or selected phone number, mail address, and still image in the FOMA phone's or UIM's Phonebook.

Operation	Storable items
While a phone number is entered	Phone number
While a redial item, dialed call record, or received call record is displayed	Phone number
While Sent Address or Received Address is displayed	Phone number/ Mail address
While a site or screen memo is displayed	Phone number/ Mail address
While the text of Message R/F or mail is displayed	Phone number/ Mail address
While the data scanned by Bar Code Reader or Text Reader is displayed	Phone number/ Mail address
While a ToruCa file is displayed	Phone number/ Mail address
While your current location or location history is displayed	Location information
While a registered LCS client is displayed	Name/ Phone number
While the Still Image List or a still image is displayed	Still image

Bring up/Select an item to be stored ▶ (FUNC) ➤ Add to phonebook

 To store the address of the sender (or of another recipient of simultaneous mail) of the received mail or the destination address of the sent mail into the Phonebook, select "Store address".

When the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, the display for selecting an address appears. Use to select the mail address or phone number you want to store.

- •To store the results scanned by Text Reader in a Phonebook entry, select "Store phone No." or "Store mail add.".
- •To store a still image in the Phonebook, select "Phonebook" from "Set display".
- When "Add to phonebook" is displayed on the Scanned Code Result display for Bar Code Reader, select "Add to phonebook"; then other information in the scanned code than the phone number or mail address is entered into each field.

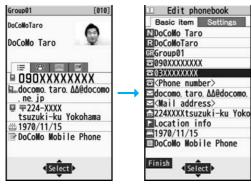
Phone or UIM➤Select a storing method.

New ... Go to step 2 on page 84.

Add. . . Adds data to the existing Phonebook entry. When storing data on the UIM, "Overwrite" is displayed.

📿 Select a search method

- **▶** Search the Phonebook
- Select a Phonebook entry to be stored
- ► (Select)



The phone number or mail address is entered automatically.

- See step 2 on page 84 to edit other items in the Phonebook entry.
- When you store into the FOMA phone's Phonebook, you can remain the original entry and store a new entry into a different location by changing the memory number.

✓ (Finish) YES

 If you store the entry in the UIM Phonebook, select "Overwrite" to overwrite the original entry, or select "Add" to store it as a new entry.

Information

- The Phonebook entry does not store the information of "Notify caller ID" included in Redial/Dialed Calls. To set Caller ID Notification, add "186"/"184" to the phone number and store it.
- Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces or deleted, and then stored.
- You may not be able to store the information from some sites into the Phonebook.

<Group Setting>Setting Groups

You can sort Phonebook entries into groups such as "Company", "Friend" etc. according to your relationship, or "Baseball", "Ceramic art" etc. according to your interest. You can use the sorted Phonebook entries as separate Phonebooks for easy access to the entry you want to search for. You can set a ring tone, vibration pattern, or illumination by group.

↑ Phonebook Group setting

- The groups on the UIM are indicated by " ".
- To reset the group names and respective settings by group, which have already been stored, press [FUNC]), select "Reset group", and then select "YES".
- Highlight a group and press (☐)(Edit)
 Select an item to be set Set the contents.
 - •When you select "GR Group name", enter a group name. You can store up to 10 full-pitch/21 half-pitch characters. However, you can store only up to 10 characters (regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters) when you enter both full-pitch and half-pitch characters for a UIM group name.
 - See step 2 on page 84 for the operations of the other items. However, you cannot set for groups on the UIM.
 - Select a stored group, or press (FUNC) and select "Check setting" to check its settings. However, you cannot check the settings of the groups on the UIM.
- Press (Finish).

<Search Phonebook> Dialing from Phonebooks

You can retrieve stored Phonebook entries by eight search methods.

Do the following operations.

 The display for the same search method as the previous one appears once you have carried out a search. Press CLR to show the Search Phonebook display.



display.	Search Phonebook display
Item	Operation/Explanation
All?	You can bring up all Phonebook entries. The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook List. (See page 90)
Reading?	You can enter the reading of the other party's name from the first character and search. You do not need to enter the full reading. Enter a part of the reading The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook List. (See page 90)
Group?	You can bring up Phonebook entries stored in the specified group. Select a group. The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook List. (See page 90) If you press (FUNC) on the Group List, the Function menu for "Group setting" is displayed.
Memory No.? [FOMA phone only]	You can search for the entry by the memory number assigned when it was stored in the Phonebook. Enter the memory number. Enter from "000" through "999" in three digits. The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook List. (See page 90) From the Stand-by display, you can press and then press to display the Memory No. Dial display. From there you can make a voice call by entering the memory number of the phone number.
Name?	You can enter the other party's name from the first character and search. You do not need to enter the full name. Enter a part of the name
Phone number?	You can enter a part of the other party's phone number and search. You can search for the entry even from the middle of phone number. Enter a part of the phone number You can display the Phonebook List also by entering a part of the phone number from the Stand-by display or the "Talking" display, and pressing .

Item	Operation/Explanation
Mail address?	You can enter a part of the other party's mail
	address and search. You can search for the
	entry even from the middle of mail address.
	► Enter a part of the mail address ► □
2-touch dial?	You can bring up the list of Phonebook entries
[FOMA phone	in memory number 000 through 009.
only]	● Phonebook entries not yet stored or being
	set with secret are displayed as <>.

Select an entry Sor (Dial)

- When the entry contains multiple phone numbers, or when you searched by "Mail address?", press from the detailed display to select a phone number.
- You can make a videophone call by pressing
 (V. phone) or PushTalk call by pressing

Information

- In a search method other than "Group?" and "2-touch dial?", enter nothing and press ; then you can search all through the Phonebook.
- When no Phonebook entry is found that matches the condition you entered by "Reading?" or "Memory No.?", the entry that is the closest to the condition is displayed.

■Search order

The Phonebook entries are searched in the order of readings you entered for storing, as follows:

"Space at the beginning of the reading" "Japanese syllabary (ア、イ、ウ、エ、オ、… ン)" "Alphabet (A, a, B, b, …Z, z)" "Numerals (0 through 9)" "Symbols" "No reading".

For "All?" and "Reading?", searching is done in the following order:

- "Japanese syllabary (ア、イ、ウ、エ、オ、... ン)"
- "Alphabet (A, a, B, b, ...Z, z)" "Space at the beginning of the reading" "Numerals (0 through 9)" "Symbols" "No reading".
- % The Memory No. Search searches in the order of the memory numbers.

■About Phonebook List

When you search from "All?", "Reading?", "Group?", or "Memory No.?", the tabs appear on the top of



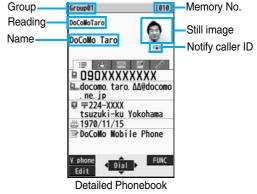
the Phonebook List. With "All?" and "Reading?", the entries are sorted by

every column of reading, with "Memory No.?" by every 100 of the memory number, and with "Group?" by every group. Press (C) to display the Phonebook entries in the tab at left or right. However, when there are 12 or more Phonebook entries in a tab, pressing (MENU) (Page ▲), (I) (Page ▼), or

- |▲||▼| brings up the previous or next page.
- After you search by "Reading?", you can move the cursor to the "ア" through "ワ", "英", and
- "他" tab by pressing each numeric key from the List. When you successively press the same numeric key, you can move the cursor within the same column.
- <Example> Press 5 to display the "ナ" tab. Each time you press 5, the cursor moves to the top of " \equiv " " \Rightarrow " and so on.
- After you search by "Group?", you can move the cursor to the top of each column in the tab by pressing each numeric key from the List. When you successively press the same numeric key, you can move the cursor within the same column.
 - <Example> Press (5) to move the cursor to the top of the "ナ" column. Each time you press 5, the cursor moves to the top of "\(\sim \)" and so
- ◆After you search by "Memory No.?", you can move the cursor to the "000~" to "900~" tab by pressing each numeric key from the List.
 - <Example> Press (5) to move the cursor to the "500~" tab.
- You can make a voice call to the phone number stored for the name highlighted on the Phonebook List, by pressing \triangle . Also, press $(\boxtimes)(V. phone)$ to make a videophone call and press | | to make a PushTalk call. When multiple phone numbers are stored for the name, the one stored first will be dialed.
- "All" appears for the Phonebook entries set to A by Phonebook 2in1 Setting, "ill" appears for the Phonebook entries set to B, and "" appears for the Phonebook entries set to common data. (Only in Dual Mode)

About the detailed display

Use (to highlight a tab, then the detailed contents are displayed.



display (Item List)

- For the Phonebook entry stored on the UIM, "] " is displayed on the memory number field.
- When Notify Caller ID is set to "Notify caller", "((□))" appears, and when set to "Don't notify", "((?))" appears.
- Under the still image, " appears for the Phonebook entries set to A by Phonebook 2in1 Setting, " appears for the Phonebook entries set to B, and " appears for the Phonebook entries set to common data. (Only in Dual Mode)
- When a Phonebook entry contains the setting for Multi Number or Chaku-moji, the set contents are displayed in the Item List/Phone Number display.

Item list

The first stored phone number, mail address, postal address, birthday, and memo are displayed.

Phone number

Mail address

When you select the item, you can compose an i-mode mail message with that mail address entered into the address field.

Personal information

When you select a postal address, memo, or still image, the full display appears. Press ()(Exit) or CLR to return to the former display.

When you select the location information, the Function menu of the location information appears. (See page 232)

Settings

When you select each item, a demo is played back. Press () (Stop) or (CLR) to end the demo.

<Edit Phonebook>

Editing Phonebook Entries

- Detailed Phonebook display (Fdit)
 - Select an item to be edited
 - **Edit the contents.**
 - See step 2 on page 84 for how to edit the Phonebook entry.
 - Even if you edit the Phonebook entry in the FOMA phone (Phone), you can remain the original contents in the original location and store the edited contents in the different location by changing the memory number.



 If you edited the UIM Phonebook entry, select "Overwrite" to overwrite the original contents, or "Add" to save the contents as a new entry.

<Delete Data> Deleting Phonebook Entries

Delete from the Detailed Phonebook Display



You can delete an item highlighted by pressing from the detailed display or delete the Phonebook entry.

Delete from the Phonebook List

Phonebook List ►(inc)

Delete data ➤ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Delete this	YES
Delete selected	Put a check mark for Phonebook entries to be deleted ☐ (Finish) ➤ YES • You can check or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all in tab/Select all/Release all in tab/Release all". • Perform the same operation as that of "Delete all" when you have selected all Phonebook entries including secret ones.
Delete all in tab	You can delete all the Phonebook entries for the displayed tab. YES
Delete all	You can delete all Phonebook entries including secret entries. Enter your Terminal Security Code YES

Information

 When you delete a Phonebook entry that is stored in the PushTalk Phonebook, the PushTalk Phonebook entry is also deleted.

<No. of Phonebook> Checking Number of Phonebook Entries

Phonebook No. of phonebook

Phone

Phonebook . . . The number of Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA phone (Phone)

Secret The number of Phonebook entries stored as secret data during Secret Mode or Secret Data Only

Image The number of Phonebook entries in which still images are stored

Chara-den . . . The number of Phonebook entries in which Chara-den images are stored

PushTalk The number of Phonebook entries stored in the PushTalk Phonebook

Voice dial The number of Phonebook entries set as voice dial entries

: The number of mail addresses that can still be stored

UIM

Phonebook . . . The number of Phonebook entries stored on the UIM

Information

While you are using 2in1, the number of displayable
 Phonebook entries for each mode is displayed. (See page 375)

Making Full Use of Phonebooks

Function Menu of the Phonebook List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
New	You can store a new Phonebook entry.
	Go to step 1 on page 84.
Sort	You can change the display order.
	➤ Select a type of order.
	●You can sort Phonebook entries in reverse
	order by selecting "Ascending" or "Descending".
	●You cannot sort on the Phonebook List with
	tabs displayed.
Attach to mail	You can send i-mode mail with the
	Phonebook entry attached.
	Go to step 2 on page 172.
Send Ir data	See page 305.
(Send phonebook)	
Send Ir data	See page 305.
(Send all	
phonebook)	
ĩC	See page 306.
transmission	
(Send phonebook)	

ng
nt
tered,
ng
ing
nt
YE
etooth
minal
nber.
tered,
ng
ne list
ok" of
the
-
node
only")
- /
Υ

- You cannot send Phonebook entries from the UIM.
- See page 348 for the Bluetooth.

Function Menu of the Detailed Phonebook Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Notify caller ID	See page 47.
Prefix numbers	See page 59.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Int'l dial assist	See page 58.
2in1 dial	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 374)
Multi number	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party. (See page 372)
Chaku-moji	See page 55.
Restrictions	See page 127.
Edit data	Go to step 1 on page 90.
Delete data	See page 91.
Store in P-Talk PB	You can store the phone number in the PushTalk Phonebook.
Add desktop icon	See page 114.
Compose message	You can compose i-mode mail to send to the mail address. Go to step 3 on page 172.
Compose SMS	You can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address Go to step 3 of "Composing SMS Messages to Send" on page 206.
Attach to mail	You can send i-mode mail with the Phonebook entry attached. Go to step 2 on page 172.
Send Ir data (Send phonebook)	See page 305.
Send Ir data (Send all phonebook)	See page 305.
transmission (Send phonebook)	See page 306.
transmission (Send all phonebook)	See page 307.
Send to Bluetooth (Send phonebook)	See page 92.
Send to Bluetooth (Send all phonebook)	See page 92.
Copy to microSD	See page 295.
Connect to Center	See page 95.
Copy name	You can paste the copied text to a mail message and others.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Copy phone number/ Copy mail add./ Copy address/ Copy location info/ Copy birthday/ Copy memo	highlighted items in the Phonebook entry. •You can paste the copied text to a mail message and others.
Secret code	You need to add the recipient's secret code when sending i-mode mail to anyone who has registered a secret code. Once you set the secret code for the mail address in the Phonebook entry, it will be added automatically whenever you send mail to that address. • Enter your Terminal Security Code • Set code • From the detailed display, press to highlight a phone number or mail address to be set with a secret code. • To check the secret code, select "Check code". • To release the secret code, select "Release code". • Enter a four-digit secret code • YES • In the Function menu, "Secret code" is indicated by " ", after it is set. • Enter a four-digit number for secret code. You cannot set "0000".
Character size	See page 92.
Set secret/ Release secret	See page 92.
Copy to UIM/ Copy from UIM	See page 346.

Select image See page 72.

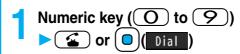
Information

<Secret code>

- You cannot set secret codes for UIM Phonebook entries.
- •The secret code can be added only when the recipient's mail address is in the form of "phone number" or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp". It cannot be added to any other form of mail address.
- If you have stored the mail address as "phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp", you cannot reply to mail messages from the party of that mail address. After changing the mail address to "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", set the secret code.

<Two-touch Dial> Making a Call with a Few Touches

When the entry is stored in memory number "000" through "009" in the FOMA phone's Phonebook, you can dial the phone number just by pressing the lowest one digit of memory number and ...



You can make a videophone call by pressing
 ✓ (V. phone) or a PushTalk call by pressing

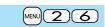
Information

- When the Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the first phone number will be dialed.
- When you set "Restrict dialing" to a Phonebook entry of memory number 000 through 009, set it to the first phone number in the Phonebook entry.
- When you store a Phonebook entry of memory number from 000 through 009 as secret data, make a call to that entry in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only.

<Voice Dial> Accessing Phonebook Entries by Voice

Just vocalize the other party's voice dial name and then the Phonebook entry is accessed for making a call.

Voice Dial Setting



You can store up to 100 voice dial entries selecting from among the Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA phone (Phone).

Phonebook Phonebook settings
Voice dial setting < New>

- You can edit the stored voice dial name by pressing [☑](Edit). Go to step 3.
- ●To delete the stored voice dial entry, press (FUNC) and select "Delete" or "Delete all" and then select "YES".

Search the PhonebookSelect a Phonebook entry.

The display for search method you used last time appears.

• The " " mark is added to the Phonebook entry stored in the Voice Dial List.

Enter a voice dial name.

- You can enter up to 22 half-pitch katakana characters.
- The reading (katakana only) of the Phonebook entry is displayed as the voice dial name. Correct the name to the easy-to-identify words.

Information

- The voice dial name set by this function is effective only for calling up a voice dial entry. For the voice guidance function, the reading (name) stored in the Phonebook is read aloud.
- When multiple similar voice dial names are stored or when the voice dial name is short, the recognition rate lowers and a wrong voice dial entry (Phonebook entry) might be accessed.
 In this case, rename the existing voice dial name and store it.
- ●You cannot store "ボイスケンサク (Boisukensaku)" and "ボイスセッテイ (Boisusettei)" as a voice dial name.

Dial from Phonebook by Voice

By your voice, you can access the Phonebook entry you set in the Voice Dial List. When "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON" and "Voice dial" is checked, the operation is guided by the voice guidance.

(for at least one second) As soon as the voice recognition start tone sounds, vocalize the voice dial name.

Start vocalizing within seven seconds after the voice recognition start tone sounds.

Once the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry, the detected result is displayed.

- You cannot change the volume of the voice recognition start tone. The voice recognition start tone does not sound during Manner Mode.
- ●If you say the word "ボイス検索 (Boisukensaku)", "使いかたナビ (Guide)" starts up. Go to step 2 on page 37.
- ●If you say the word "ボイス設定 (Boisusettei)", the display of "Voice settings" appears. (See page 95)
- When "Auto voice dial" is set to "ON", the display for Auto Voice Dial appears after the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry. Then about two seconds later, the FOMA phone automatically dials out.

Highlight a detected result and press or () (Dial).

The first phone number in the selected Phonebook entry is dialed.

Information

- When you vocalize, keep your mouth away from the microphone about 10 cm. If your voice is too distant, it may be difficult to recognize your voice.
- Pronounce the voice dial name as clearly as possible.
- Before and after voice production, avoid making the sounds unrelated to the voice dial name such as clearing your throat, clicking your tongue, noisy breathing or other noise.
- Vocalize in quiet, noise-free locations.
- While vocalizing, do not put your fingers over the microphone, or press or brush the keys.

To access a voice dial entry using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch

You need to set "Voice earphone dial" to "ON" and open the FOMA phone in advance.

- Press and hold the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for at least one second.
- Perform the operations in step 1 and step 2 of "Dial from Phonebook by Voice" on page 94.
 - You can make a call also by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch instead of pressing or .

To access a voice dial entry using a Bluetooth device

You can access a voice dial entry with the FOMA phone closed as well. You need to set "Voice earphone dial" to "ON" in advance, and connect with the Bluetooth device using the Headset service or Hands-free service.

• For using the Hands-free service, the Bluetooth device needs to support a voice recognition function.

Press the switch of the Bluetooth device.

- Press and hold the switch of the Bluetooth device or of the FOMA phone for at least one second when the FOMA phone is closed.
- Access a voice dial entry following the voice guidance.
 - Once the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry, the detected result is displayed on the Private window.
 - The FOMA phone automatically dials out about two seconds after the voice guidance to that effect finishes.

Voice Settings

Settings Other settings

- Voice settings
- ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Auto voice	You can automatically make a call to the
dial	phone number accessed by voice.
	► ON or OFF
Voice	You can access the voice dial entries by using
earphone dial	the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch
	(option) or Bluetooth Headset F01 (option).
	► ON or OFF
Read aloud	See page 333.
settings	
Read aloud	See page 333.
volume	
Read aloud	See page 334.
speed	
Read aloud	See page 334.
output	
Read aloud	See page 334.
valid set.	

<Data Security Service>

Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook to Data Storage Center

You can save the Phonebook stored in your FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center. By accessing the Data Storage Center, you can restore/update the Phonebook to your FOMA phone.

Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis.

- You cannot use Data Security Service when you are out of the service area.
- For details on Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

► LifeKit Data Security Service ► Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Connect to	► Enter your Terminal Security Code ➤ YES
Center	
Sent/recv. PB	You can display the records of
data list	communication such as saving the
	Phonebook, mail messages, or images to the
	Data Storage Center.
	Select a record.
	• Select a communication completion time in
	the list to switch to the detailed display.

Item	Operation/Explanation
PB image	You can set whether to save images set for
sending	the Phonebook entries to the Data Storage
	Center.
	➤ ON or OFF

Information

<Connect to Center>

- You cannot save the UIM Phonebook.
- When the Phonebook entries saved to the Data Storage Center exceeds the number of Phonebook entries storable in the FOMA phone's Phonebook, the excess entries cannot be updated.

<Sent/recv. PB data list>

 Up to 30 records are saved. When more than 30 records are saved, the older records are overwritten.

<PB image sending>

 You cannot save the images whose output from FOMA phone is prohibited.

Auto-update

On the site of the Data Storage Center, you can set so as to periodically update and save the Phonebook entries in your FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center.

• For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

- The Phonebook is not automatically updated while another function is working at the time of Auto-update.
- If the Phonebook cannot be updated, the notification icon of " (PB in Center updated) appears on the Stand-by display. Select " , and the update display appears if Auto-update is set. If Auto-update is not set, the update display appears after you enter your Terminal Security Code.

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Sound Settings	
Changing Ring Tone of FOMA Phone	98
Setting Sound Effects of Ring Tone or MelodyMelody Effect	99
Informing You of an Incoming Call by Vibration	100
Using Recorded Sound as Ring Tone	100
Changing Calling Tone	100
Setting Keypad SoundKeypad Sound>	101
Setting Charging-start/end TonesCharge Sound	101
Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected Quality Alarm	101
Setting Ring Time for Mail and Messages R/F (Mail/Message Ring Time)	101
Sounding Ring Tone from Earphone OnlyHeadset Usage Setting>	101
Silencing TonesManner Mode	102
Selecting Manner Mode Type	103
Screen/Light Settings	
Changing Displays	104
Displaying an Image Stored in Phonebook during Ringing Display Phonebook Image>	106
Setting Displays for Private Window	106
Displaying Arrival Information by Opening FOMA Phone Received Mail/Call at Open	106
Setting Lights for Display and Keypad	107
Adjusting Quality of Display Automatically	107
Setting Quality of Display	107
Setting Color Combination for Display	108
Setting Display of Main Menu	108
Using Kisekae Tool	109
Using Feel Function	109
Setting Color of Call/Charging Indicator and Others	111
Checking Missed Calls and New Mail by Tone and Call/Charging Indicator	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	112
Using Icons on Desktop	112
Changing Character Font	114
Changing Character Size	115
Setting Clock Display	116

<Select Ring Tone>



Changing Ring Tone of FOMA Phone

You can set ring tones by incoming type. If you select an i-motion movie, the i-motion movie and sound are played back for incoming calls/messages. (Chaku-motion)

- The ring tone is the PCM sound source, chord of 128 tones, and ADPCM compliant.
- See "Add to Phonebook" for setting a ring tone by Phonebook entry, and see "Group Setting" for setting it by group.

■Ring Tone List (pre-installed)

Display	Title	The Name of Lyricist/ Composer
Pattern 1	_	<u>-</u>
Pattern 2	_	_
Pattern 3	_	_
Pattern 4	_	_
Pattern 5	_	_
YOU RAISE ME UP ^{**1}	YOU RAISE ME UP	Composer: LOVLAND ROLF
THIS LOVE ^{*1}	THIS LOVE	Composer: ANGELA AKI
EL COLIBRI	EL COLIBRI	Composer: SAGRERAS JULIO S
LA FILLE AUX CHEVEUX ^{®1}	LA FILLE AUX CHEVEUX DE LIN	Composer: DEBUSSY CLAUDE ACHILLE
SOMEDAY MY PRINCE	SOMEDAY MY PRINCE WILL COME	Composer: CHURCHILL FRNK E
POLET SHMAJA	POLET SHMAJA	Composer: RIMSKIJ KORSAKOVICH NICOLAS ANDR
RHAPSODY ON A THEME	RHAPSODY ON A THEME OF PAGANINI OP 43	Composer: RACHMANINOFF SERGEI
JAZZ ^{※1}	_	_
3D tone1 ^{※1}	_	_
3D tone2 ^{*1}	_	_
3D tone3 ^{*1}	_	_
3D tone4 ^{%1}	_	_
bubble	_	_
waterdrop	_	_
Mail 1	_	_
Mail 2	_	_
CHURAUMI KAKUREKUMANOMI *2	_	_

%1 3D sound supported. See page 99 for 3D sound.

2 i-motion movie

(Note) Uppercases of Roman alphabet are used for titles, lyricists, and composers.

The name of lyricists and composers are described conforming to the JASRAC web page.

Whole part of long titles may not be displayed due to restriction of the display size.



Select an incoming type.

● Select an item and press (☐)(Play) to check the contents actually played back or displayed.

Select ring tone Select a type of ring tone.

Select a folder ➤ Select a ring tone.

- If you select "MUSIC" in step 2, select "Fullsong ring tone" or "Point ring tone". (See page 327)
- See page 162 when you select "Search by i-mode".

Information

- You can set the Call Receiving display by selecting "Phone" or "Videophone", and then by selecting "Select calling disp.". Go to step 2 on page 105.
- You can set the Mail Receiving display by selecting "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" or "MessageF", and then by selecting "Select receiving disp.". Go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 104.
- The priority order of ring tones is as follows: "Read aloud settings" "Setting for Phonebook entry" "Group setting" "Select ring tone". When a call comes in to the additional number, the ring tone specified by "Set as ring tone" of "Multi number" sounds.

If a call comes in to Number B while using 2in1, the priority order of the ring tones is as follows: "Read aloud settings"

"Setting for Phonebook entry" "Group setting" "Ringtone set. for No. B" (see page 373).

 The ring tone or images set at purchase might be played back or displayed for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and "Display setting".

Information

- You can set an i-motion movie as a ring tone only if its property for "Ring tone" is "Available". See "

 motion info" to check whether the i-motion movie can be set for a ring tone.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a mail ring tone, you can press CLR or others to stop the ring tone.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion), it is played back taking priority over "Display setting". However, if you set a voice-only i-motion movie for the ring tone, the image set by "Display setting" is displayed.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for "Select calling disp.", the i-motion movie is played back taking priority over this function for incoming calls. However, if you set an i-motion movie containing only video for "Select calling disp.", the ring tone selected for this function is played back for incoming calls.
- You cannot set an i-motion movie which contains video as a PushTalk ring tone.
- When different types of mail i-mode mail, SMS messages, chat mail, or Messages R/F are received at the same time, the priority order of ring tone as follows:
 "Chat mail" "i-mode mail/SMS" "MessageR" "MessageF". If you receive the same type of mail simultaneously, the ring tone corresponding to the mail you have received last works.
- For the melody downloaded from a site or attached to mail, or the melody prohibited to attach to mail or output from the FOMA phone, a playing part may be specified in advance. When the play-part-specified melody is set for the ring tone, only the specified part is played back.

<Melody Effect>



Setting Sound Effects of Ring Tone or Melody

You can set whether to add stereophonic sound effects to the playback tone of melodies and i-motion movies, ring tones, and effect tones.

Settings Sound Melody effect
Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Stereo&	Plays back 3-dimensional sound from the
3DSound	stereo-speakers.
	Effective for the i-αppli effect tones or ring
	tones.
	► ON or OFF

Item	Operation/Explanation
Position to	Sets the play start position of the melody that
play	has been set for the ring tone or alarm tone.
	Select an item.
	Play all
	Plays back from the beginning of the melody.
	Play portion
	Plays back from the start position set for
	the melody.

■3D Sound

3D Sound is a function that creates the stereophonic sound and the sound moving through the space, using the stereo-speakers (or stereo-earphone set). 3D Sound compatible i-αppli games, ring tones, and i-motion movies enable you to enjoy live-like feeling of sounds.

To enjoy the powerful 3D Sound and to get the best performance, keep the FOMA phone about 40 cm away from you, holding it in front of you.

Note that the sound effects may be weakened if you hold the FOMA phone to the left or right from the front or if it is too close to or too far from you even in front of you.

Information

• Stereognostic sense might differ depending on the person. If you feel strange, switch "Stereo&3DSound" to "OFF".

<Vibrator>

Informing You of an Incoming Call by Vibration

You can set the vibrator to notify you of incoming calls and mail.

Select an incoming type

Select a vibration pattern.

Pattern 1 Alternates between vibration on (about 0.5 second) and off (about 0.5 second).

Pattern 2 Alternates between vibration on (about 1 second) and off (about 1 second).

Pattern 3 Alternates between vibration on (about 3 seconds) and off (about 1 second).

Melody linkage . . . Vibrates in time with the vibration pattern stored in the melody.

OFF Does not vibrate.

- While you are selecting a pattern, the FOMA phone vibrates by the selected pattern for confirmation.
 However, it does not vibrate if you select "Melody linkage".
- The following icons are displayed on the Stand-by display while the vibrator is set:
 - : Vibrates for incoming voice calls, PushTalk calls or videophone calls.
 - Vs: Vibrates for incoming mail, chat mail or Messages R/F.
 - : Vibrates for incoming voice calls, PushTalk calls or videophone calls, and vibrates for incoming mail, chat mail or Messages R/F.

Information

- The priority order of vibrators is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" "Group setting" "Vibrator".
- The vibrator vibrates at a regular strength, regardless of the ring volume level.
- Even when "Melody linkage" is set, the FOMA phone vibrates with "Pattern 2" if an i-motion movie or melody with no vibration pattern is set for the ring tone.
- Be careful not to leave the FOMA phone on a desk or similar places with the vibrator activated; when a call comes in, the FOMA phone might move and fall by vibration.

<Voice Announce>



Using Recorded Sound as Ring Tone

You can set the sound you recorded with the FOMA phone for a ring tone (including a ring tone for Number B of 2in1), On hold tone/Holding tone, alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", and "Book program", and an answer message for Record Message.

You can record only one item for about 15 seconds.

LifeKit ► Rec.msg/voice memo Voice announce ► Record

- ●To suspend recording midway, press (Stop),
 (Stop),
 (CLR). The contents recorded to that point are saved
- The tone beeps about 5 seconds before the recording time (for about 15 seconds) ends.
 When recording ends, the tone beeps twice, and the former display returns.
- The recording is suspended when a call comes in, when an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Book program", or "Timer recording" sounds, or when you switch displays using Multitask during recording. (The contents recorded to that point are saved.)
- To play back the recorded sound, select "Play". To suspend playback midway, press (Stop), (Stop), or (CLR).
- ◆To erase the recorded sound, select "Erase", then select "YES".

<Melody Call Setting>

Changing Calling Tone

Melody Call is a service that changes the ringing tone phone callers hear, to a melody you like. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

 Melody call is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.

Settings Melody Call setting YES Follow the instructions on the display.

- Melody Call is not available for incoming videophone calls and PushTalk calls.
- When you select "YES" from the confirmation display asking whether to connect to the site, the line is connected to the i-mode site. You are not charged a packet communication fee for connecting to the site for settings, however, you are charged for connecting to the IP site, i-mode menu site, and free melody corner.

<Keypad Sound>



Setting Keypad Sound

Settings Sound Keypad sound ON or OFF

Information

- The sound volume for keypad sound cannot be changed.
- If you set this function to "OFF", the battery level tone (see page 44) and respective warning tones do not sound.
- The keypad does not make a sound when you press ▲, during ringing, or during playback of a moving image or imotion movie.
- When you press ▼ with your FOMA phone closed, the FOMA phone works according to "Info notice setting" on page 112.

<Charge Sound> Setting Charging-start/end Tones

The confirmation tone sounds twice when charging starts/ends.

Settings Other settings Battery
Charge sound ON or OFF

Information

- The sound volume for charge sound cannot be changed.
- The charging confirmation tone does not sound when a display other than the Stand-by display is shown or during Manner Mode or Public Mode (Drive Mode).

<Quality Alarm>



Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected

When a call is liable to be disconnected midway because of bad radio wave conditions, an alarm sounds to inform you right before possible disconnection.

Settings Talk Quality alarm

No tone Does not sound.

High tone . . . High alarm sounds.

Low tone . . . Low alarm sounds.

Information

- You might be disconnected without hearing an alarm if radio wave conditions deteriorate suddenly.
- An alarm for "Quality alarm" sounds only from the earpiece during a videophone call.

<Mail/Message Ring Time> Setting Ring Time for Mail and Messages R/F

You can set the duration of the ring tone which sounds for incoming i-mode mail, SMS messages, Chat mail and Messages R/F.

- Settings Sound Mail/Msg. ring time
 - ► Select a type of mail or message
 - **▶** ON or OFF**▶** Enter a ring time (seconds).
 - Enter in two digits from "01" through "30".

< Headset Usage Setting>



Sounding Ring Tone from Earphone Only

You can set where you make the ring tone and alarm sound from for when you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option).

- Settings Sound
 - Headset usage setting
 - ► Headset + speaker or Headset only

- Even when you set "Headset only", the ring tone sounds from both the earphone and speaker about 20 seconds after ringing starts. However, the tone does not sound from the speaker but sounds from the earphone only even after 20 seconds have elapsed if the tone sounds for the operations other than incoming calls, incoming mail, and alarm notification.
- Even when you set "Headset only", the tone sounds from the speaker when you do not connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch or when you start shooting still or moving images.
- In the following cases, the tone sounds from the earphone when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is connected, and from the speakers when it is not connected, regardless of this setting.
 - · During watching a One Seg program
 - During playback of a melody
- · During playback of an i-motion movie
- · During playback of a video file
- While i-αppli is running
- · During playback of a music file by MUSIC Player
- · During playback of a Music&Video Channel program
- Do not wind the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch around the FOMA phone.
- The FOMA phone may pick up noise if you take the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch close to the FOMA phone during a call.

<Manner Mode> Silencing Tones

When you do not want the FOMA phone to make any sound, you can just press one key to switch off the ring tone, keypad sound and any other sound from the speaker.

You can use "Manner mode set" to select Manner Mode functions from three types; "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "Original".

While "Manner mode" or "Super silent" is activated, or while "Mic sensitiv." is set to "Up" in "Original", you can talk softly on the phone but your voice can still be heard clearly at the other end.

During standby/During a call
(for at least one second)

Manner mode selected in "Manner mode set" is set.

- When FOMA phone is closed, press and hold ▼ for at least one second to activate Manner Mode.
- During Manner Mode, "∑" is displayed. The settings you selected for "Manner mode set" are also displayed.
 Y½: Indicates that "Vibrator" will work to notify events.
 S▷ / S☒/ S☒: Indicate that "Ring volume" has been set to "Silent".

Information

- If you activate Manner Mode during a call or calling, the message to that effect appears.
- The recording start tone sounds even in Manner Mode when you shoot still images or moving images.
- In Manner Mode, if you try to play back a melody, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play it back. Select "YES" to play back the melody at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". If the setting is "Silent" or "Step", the volume is Level 2.
- In Manner Mode, if you do the following operations, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play back voice or music.
 - · Watching a One Seg program
 - · Playing back an i-motion movie
 - · Playing back a video file
 - · Playing back a music file by MUSIC Player
- Playing back a Music&Video Channel program Select "YES" to play it back at the volume set for each player. When you change the volume level, it is played back at the set volume for the next time.
- When a Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, the sound comes out of the earphone. The confirmation display asking whether to play back sound or music files during Manner Mode does not appear. Further, the playback tone does not sound from the speakers even if you unplug the Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch during playing back sound or music files by each player.

■To release Manner Mode

Press and hold # for at least one second. During a call or calling, two beeps sound and the message that is released appears.

 When FOMA phone is closed, press and hold ▼ for at least one second to release Manner Mode.

■To activate Manner Mode during ringing

Press (Memo) or ▼.

Manner Mode is activated and Record Message is simultaneously activated so that the caller can leave a voice/ video message.

Even when "Record message setting" has not been set to "ON", the Record Message function works.

Press or (Answer) to answer a voice call, or press , (Answer), or (Subst.) to answer a videophone call.

- When five messages for voice calls and two messages for videophone calls have already been recorded, or when a PushTalk call comes in, Record Message does not work.
 Manner Mode specified by "Manner mode set" will work.
- When the call finishes, Manner Mode is still activated.

Selecting Manner Mode Type

You can select one of three types of operations for Manner Mode.

Operations during Manner Mode

	Manner Mode	Super Silent	Original
Record message	Set value of Record message		ON or OFF
Vibrator**1	ON		ON or OFF
Phone volume	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step
Mail volume	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step2
Alarm volume ^{*2}	Sile	ent	Silent through Level 6 and step
VM tone	ON	OFF	ON or OFF3
Keypad sound	OFF		ON or OFF4
Microphone sensitivity	U	p	Normal or Up
Low voltage alarm tone		·	ON or OFF
(Low battery alarm)	OI	F .	When "LVA tone" is set to "ON", it works with
• •			the same set value as ①*3
Confirmation tone for selecting ring tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ① • ②
On hold tone	Sile	ent	Works with the same set value as 1 *4
Holding tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as 1 *5
ToruCa obtained tone and ToruCa	Silent		
failed-to-obtain tone			Works with the same set value as 1
Confirmation tone for recording voice	ON	OFF	Works with the same set value as (3)
announce	ON	OFF	works with the same set value as (5)
Battery level tone	Sile	ent	Silent
Voice recognition start tone	Sile	ent	Silent
Confirmation tone for checking missed	Cil	ent	Marka with the same ast value as 1 %6
calls and new mail	Sili	HIL	Works with the same set value as ①*6
Warning tones	Silent		Works with the same set value as 4
Schedule alarm	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①
Alarm for Book program	Silent		Works with the same set value as 1
Alarm for Timer recording	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①*7
Start tones for shooting still and moving	Level 4		Lavel 4
images			Level 4
Confirmation tone for selecting shutter	OFF		Works with the same set value as ③
sound			Works with the same set value as
Switching to Hands-free by			
"Hands-free w/ V. phone" or	OFF		OFF
"Hands-free w/ PushTalk"			
Read aloud volume	Silent		Works with the same set value as
	Jiii	J. 1.	"Read aloud volume" on page 333

X1 Vibrator works instead of (or with) the following tones:

Ring tone and alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Book program" and "Timer recording"

The vibration pattern will be the same as the setting described on page 100. However, if the setting described on page 100 is "OFF", "Pattern 2" will be activated.

Confirmation tone for checking missed calls and new mail

- · Vibrates for about 1 second when you have missed calls or new mail messages.
- Vibrates for about 0.2 second when you have no missed calls and new mail messages.
- *2 When "Prefer manner mode" on page 335 is set to "OFF", the alarm tone sounds at the volume set for Alarm.
- ※3 The tone sounds at Level 1 when ① is "Silent".

- ※6 The tone sounds at Level 6 when

 ① is not "Silent".
- ※7 The tone does not sound when ① is "Step".

You can select from among standard "Manner mode" to inform you of incoming calls or mail by the vibrator, "Super silent" to erase sounds including confirmation tones from the earpiece, or "Original" to customize operations.

- Settings Incoming call
 - Manner mode set
 - Manner mode, Super silent or Original
 - Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Record msg.	 ON or OFF Even if you select "ON", the ring time is fixed to about 13 seconds and cannot be changed when "Record message setting" on page 67 is set to "OFF". See page 67 for Record Message Setting.
Vibrator	You can set the FOMA phone to vibrate for incoming calls and mail. ON or OFF See page 100 for Vibrator.
Phone vol.	You can adjust the ring volume for incoming voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls. Use to adjust the volume. • See page 64 for Ring Volume.
Mail vol.	You can adjust the ring volume for i-mode mail, SMS messages, and Messages R/F. Use to adjust the volume. • See page 64 for Ring Volume.
Alarm vol.	► Use to adjust the volume. • See page 335 for Alarm.
VM tone	You can set the FOMA phone to sound a confirmation tone when a record message is played back, a voice memo is recorded or played back, and a movie memo is recorded. ON or OFF
Keypad sound	ON or OFF See page 101 for Keypad Sound.
Mic sensitiv.	Normal or Up
LVA tone	● ON or OFF • See page 44 for LVA Tone (low battery alarm).

<Display Setting>



Changing Displays

Set Stand-by Display

You can set an image for the Stand-by display. You can set also i-motion movies shot by the FOMA phone or downloaded from sites for the Stand-by display.

- Settings Display Display setting

 Stand-by display Select a type of image.
 - If you select "Calendar", select a display format, and then select "BG image ON" or "BG image OFF". If you select "BG image OFF", the setting is completed.
- y Select a folder Select an image.
 - When the image is larger than the Stand-by display, the overall image is displayed with the dimensions shrunk and proportional ratio retained. The image smaller than the Stand-by display is displayed in equivalent dimensions.
 - See page 162 when you select "Search by i-mode".

■When Calendar is set

The calendar in the set format appears on the Stand-by display. You can check the calendar for the previous or next month or set schedule events (see page 337) with ease.



- From the Stand-by display, press
- and then to display the previous calendar, or press to display the next calendar.

When a desktop icon is pasted on the Stand-by display, pressing
highlights the desktop icon previously used or the calendar.

Highlight the calendar, press (Select) and use to display the previous or next calendar.

Press (Select) again to set "Schedule".

■When an original animation or animation GIF is set It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA phone. The first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display.

■When a Flash movie is set

It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA phone. The image stopped such as by your first operation is displayed as the Stand-by display.

■When an i-motion movie is set

It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA phone. The first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display.

Press ☐ or ▲/▼ during playback to adjust the volume.
 Press ⑥, ☒, ☒, ⑥, CLR, ☒, Թ or

- to end the playback.
- If you play back an i-motion movie during Manner Mode, the sound is not played back.

Information

- Some i-motion movies might not be correctly displayed.
- You cannot set a still image in excess of Stand-by (480 x 854) size or 300 Kbytes for the Stand-by display.
- You cannot set some images or i-motion movies for the Stand-by display.
- The sound of Flash movies cannot be played back.

Set the Wake-up Display

You can set an image or message to be displayed for when the power is turned on.

- Settings Display Display setting
 Wake-up display Select a type of image.
 - If you select "Message", enter a message. You can enter up to 50 full-pitch/100 half-pitch characters.
 - If you select "My picture" or " 🖁 motion", go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 104.
 - See page 162 when you select "Search by i-mode".

Information

- You cannot set some images or i-motion movies for the Wake-up display.
- The sound of Flash movies cannot be played back.

Set Displays for Dialing/Calling and Others

You can set an image for the Dialing/Call Receiving display, Mail Sending/Mail Receiving display, and Checking display.

Settings Display Display setting Select a type of display.

- When "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" is selected, select "Select calling disp.".
- When "Mail receiving" is selected, select "Select receiving disp." and go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 104.
- If you select "Dialing", "Videophone dialing", "Mail sending", "Check new message", or "Mail/msg. rct. result", go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 104.
- Select "Incoming call", "Videophone incoming" or "Mail receiving" and press (☐)(☐Play☐) to check the contents actually displayed or played back.

Select a type of image.

Go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 104.

- When you select "Incoming call", "Videophone incoming", or "Mail receiving", select "Select ring tone" to set the ring tone. Go to step 2 on page 98.
- The priority order of displays for call receiving is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" "Group setting" "Disp. PH-book image" "Display setting". However, when "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" of "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON", the default image is displayed. The same order applies if a call comes in to Number B while using 2in1. However, when you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion) by "Ringtone set. for No. B", it is played back as Chaku-motion, taking priority over this function.
- •When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion), it is played back for incoming calls, taking priority over this function. However, if you set a voice-only i-motion movie, the image set by this function is displayed.
- •When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for "Select calling disp.", the i-motion movie is played back taking priority over "Select ring tone" of "Incoming call" for incoming calls. However, if you set an i-motion movie containing only video for "Select calling disp.", the ring tone selected for "Select ring tone" of "Incoming call" is played back
- The images or ring tone set at purchase might be displayed or played back for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and "Select ring tone".
- You cannot set some images for "Display setting".
- The sound of Flash movies is not played back.

Set Battery Icon and Antenna Icon

You can set the icons for battery level and radio wave reception level that appear on the display.

- **Settings** Display Display setting Display setting
 - ► Battery icon or Antenna icon
 - Select a pattern.

Information

●You cannot change icons such as "" or "self".

<Display Phonebook Image>

Displaying an Image Stored in Phonebook during Ringing

If the caller ID notified by the caller matches the phone number stored in the Phonebook, the still image stored in the Phonebook is displayed.

► Settings Incoming call

Disp. PH-book image ON or OFF

Information

The priority order of displays for call receiving is as follows:
 "Picture for Phonebook entry" "Picture for group"
 "Image for Phonebook entry" "Display setting". However, when "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" of "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON", the default image is displayed.

<Private Window>



Setting Displays for Private Window

Settings Display Private window
ON or OFF Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Clock	You can set the display pattern of the clock. Pattern 1, Pattern 2 or Pattern 3
Orientation	You can set the direction of the clock to be displayed. Pattern 1 or Pattern 2
Brightness	You can adjust the brightness to Level 1 (dark) through Level 3 (bright). Select a brightness level.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Called	You can display the phone number (name when stored in the Phonebook) of the caller during ringing. ON or OFF You can set whether to display a Chaku-moji message. ON or OFF
Mail	You can display the received date/time and others of the mail message or Message R/F. (See page 30) ON or OFF The received date/time and others of the mail message or Message R/F in the box or folders with security set are not displayed.
i-Channel ticker	● You can set for each mode of 2in1. When 2in1 is deactivated, it becomes common to the setting in A Mode.
Disp. connection	You can set whether to display animations/ characters during communication. ON or OFF

<Received Mail/Call at Open> Displaying Arrival Information by Opening FOMA Phone

When you have a missed call, new mail message, chat mail message, message R/F, the detailed Missed Call display/Inbox List/Chat Mail display/Message R/F List is displayed at opening the FOMA phone.

MENU ➤ Settings ➤ DisplayRecv. mail/call at open ➤ ON or OFF

- When a call comes in while you are using Simple Menu, the detailed Received Call display appears.
- When multiple newly received messages/missed calls are found, the display for the last message/call appears.
- When a new mail message, chat mail, Message R/F are simultaneously received, the messages are displayed in the order of the chat mail message, i-mode message, Message R, and Message F.

<Backlight>



Setting Lights for Display and Keypad

■ Settings Display Backlight
■ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Lighting	You can set whether to light the backlight in ordinary time. ON or OFF If you set to "OFF", " " appears on the Stand-by display.
	Also, you can set whether to activate Power Saver Mode for the main display. ON or OFF Enter a light time (seconds). Enter from "015" through "999" in three digits.
Charging	Standard or Constant light Standard Lights during charging in the same setting as it lights in ordinary time. Constant light Always lights during battery charge.
Area	You can set the range the backlight lights in. LCD+Keys or LCD
Brightness	You can adjust the brightness of the backlight for the main display to Level 1 (dark) through Level 5 (bright). Select a brightness level. When "Auto setting" is set, the backlight set by "Area" is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness that has been detected by the light sensor.
Soft light	You can set whether to light the backlight for the main display softly. ON or OFF

■To switch the backlight on/off by pressing one key Press and hold 5 for at least one second.

Information

- When "Lighting" is set to "ON", the backlight stays lit while a call is coming in and the area specified by "Area" lights for about 15 seconds when you turn on the power, touch the keys, or open the FOMA phone. The backlight stays lit while the camera is activated or a moving image/i-motion movie is played back. When "OFF" is set, it does not light. However, it stays lit during recording of a moving image regardless of the "Lighting" setting.
- See page 71 for Backlight during a videophone call.
- See page 257 for Backlight during watching a One Seg program.

Information

- If the power is supplied from external power sources such as an AC adapter (option), the setting for "Charging" applies, regardless of the on/off setting of the backlight for "Lighting".
- When you display the text of i-mode mail or Messages R/F, the lighting time varies according to the length of the text.
- If you set "Power saver mode" to "ON", the display switches to Power saver mode and goes off after the specified time elapses with no operation on the Stand-by display. When you set "Illumination in talk" of "Illumination" to "OFF", the display during a voice call also goes off.
- When an image other than still image is set for the Stand-by display, the Stand-by display shifts to Power Saver Mode after the image is played back and a standby time elapses.
- The FOMA phone does not switch to Power Saver Mode during data communication or charging, or while the i-αppli Stand-by display is running.
- The receiving display does not appear when you receive a call in Public Mode (Drive Mode).

Adjusting Quality of Display Automatically

You can set whether to automatically adjust the brightness of the display backlight and to compensate the image quality according to that brightness during playback of i-motion movies, PC movies, Music&Video Channel programs, or video files, during a videophone call, or during watching a One Seg program.

Settings Display LCD Al

 If you operate the setting from the Function menu during a videophone call or watching a One Seg program, the setting is effective only for the current videophone call or One Seg program.

Information

- If you set to "ON", the brightness is adjusted within the level specified for "Brightness" of "Backlight". The brightness is adjusted also while you are selecting a menu item.
- This function is disabled during Play Background.

<Image Quality> Setting Quality of Display

Settings Display
Image quality Select an item.

Normal Normal image quality **Vivid** Vivid image quality

Dynamic . . . Dynamic image quality in which motion is emphasized

<Color Theme Setting> Setting Color Combination for Display

You can set the display color pattern of characters and backgrounds, and so on.

- Settings Display
 - ► Color theme setting ➤ Select a color theme.
 - While a color theme is selected, the selected color theme appears on the display for confirmation.

Information

 You cannot change the color for icons and images displayed in multiple colors, the DoCoMo pictographs, and the Internet web pages (sites) supporting i-mode.

<Menu Icon Setting> Setting Display of Main Menu

You can change the icons and the background images of Main Menu.

MENU ► (FUNC) ➤ Menu icon setting ➤ Select a pattern.



Black

White

Red







Pink gold

Enlarge menu

Normal

When you select "Customize" in step 1, select a menu icon or background image to be changed Select a folder

Customize

☑Network service

■Background image

Select

1 Mail

日i-mode 日音以ppli 日Settings 日Data box

⊡LifeKit

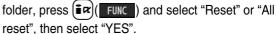
■Phonebook

⊒Stationery □MUSIC ☑1Seg ⊞Osaifu-Keitai

Select an image.

Repeat step 2 and set menu icons and a background image.

- While selecting a menu icon or background image, press
 (Play) to confirm the currently set image.
- ●To reset the menu icon and background image set to "Customize" to "スタンダード (Standard)" in the "Pre-installed"



• See page 162 when you select "Search by i-mode".

- The image you can customize is a JPEG or GIF image whose size is Stand-by (480 x 854) or smaller and up to 300 Kbytes. Perform "Change size" or "Trim away" for other images.
- ●When a customized image is deleted, "スタンダード (Standard)" in the "Pre-installed" folder returns.
- When Personal Data Lock is activated while "Customize" is set, the default image is displayed.
- When you set "Customize", the Main Menu icons do not switch even if you switch "Select language".

<Kisekae Tool> Using Kisekae Tool

You can use Kisekae Tool to change the ring tone, Stand-by display, menu icons and others at a time.

 See page 161 for details on how to download Kisekae Tool files.

■Items that can be set with Kisekae Tool

- · Select ring tone
- · Illumination in talk
- · Display setting
- · Side key illumination
- · Color theme setting
- · Posit. tone/illum.
- · Menu icon setting
- Tone
- "Clock" and "Orientation" of Private window
- Illumination
- Items that can be set differ depending on the Kisekae Tool file.
- The setting change of phone/videophone ring tones, mail ring tone, and Stand-by display is applied only to the A Mode of 2in1. The other changes are applied to the all modes of 2in1.
- Settings ➤ Kisekae
 ➤ Select a Kisekae Tool file and press

 (Set) ➤ YES
 - •The " " is added to the currently set Kisekae Tool.
 - Depending on the selected Kisekae Tool, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to change the character size.

Information

- For the functions set by Kisekae Tool, each setting display is shown with "Follow Kisekae Tool" is highlighted. You can separately change each setting, however, if you want to reset to the setting by Kisekae Tool, you need to set all again. You cannot select "Follow Kisekae Tool".
- If you use Kisekae Tool to change the design of the Menu display, some menu configurations change according to the usage frequency depending on the type of the menu. Further, some menu numbers that are assigned to the menu items do not apply.
 In that case, you cannot operate as described in this manual, so you are advised to show Normal Main Menu by

In that case, you cannot operate as described in this manual, so you are advised to show Normal Main Menu by "Disp. default MENU" (see page 109), or reset Main Menu by "Reset menu screen".

Function Menu of Main Menu

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Menu icon	See page 108.
setting	

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Change	You can manually change the display order of
launcher	Main menu.
	➤ Select the menu item to sort ➤ YES
Disp. default	You can temporarily show Normal Main
MENU	Menu.
	 Once you close Normal Main Menu, the currently set Main Menu returns.
Reset	See page 109.

Reset Changed Design

You can reset the items changed by Kisekae Tool.



- Enter your Terminal Security Code
- Select an item.

Reset disp. /sound

. . . Resets all of "Items that can be set with Kisekae Tool" to the default.

Reset menu screen

...Resets Main Menu to the default. You can reset also by pressing and holding CLR for at least one second and selecting "YES" from the Stand-by display.

Reset menu log

...Resets the operation records of Main Menu to the default.

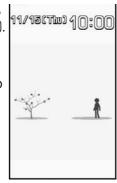
Information

 Even if you perform "Reset disp. /sound" or "Reset menu screen", you cannot reset enlarged characters on the Main Menu.

<Feel Settings> Using Feel Function

The Feel function reproduces the atmosphere of "communications" or "mail" by actions of 45 types of animated characters.

- When the FOMA phone is closed, press
 or ▲/▼ to end the playback.



After ending a call



After receiving a mail message

Feel * Talk

Once you activate Feel * Talk, a Feel * Talk image is played back when a call ends. You can play it back also from the Redial List, Dialed Call List, Received Call List, or each detailed display.

You can make the Call/Charging indicator light/flicker in synchronization with Feel * Talk when you close your FOMA phone after ending a call.

 You cannot use Feel * Talk for videophone calls and PushTalk communications.

1	Settings Feel settings
	► Feel * Talk ➤ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Display after talk	A Feel * Talk image is played back on the Stand-by display when a call ends. ON or OFF When this function is set to "OFF", a Feel * Talk icon does not appear on each record display even while "Disp. /play in history" is set to "ON".
Disp. /play in history	A Feel * Talk icon appears on each record display. ON or OFF
Illumination	At the first time of closing the FOMA phone after a call ends, the Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers in synchronization with Feel * Talk. ON or OFF The Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers regardless of the setting of "Illum. when folded".

Information

 A Feel * Talk image is played back even if you end a call after switching between a videophone call and voice call.

Feel * Mail

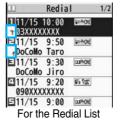
Once you activate Feel * Mail, a Feel * Mail image is played back on the Private window after you receive an i-mode mail/SMS message. You can play it back also from the Received Address List or detailed display.

Settings Feel settings
Feel * Mail Do the following operations.

	0 " /= 1 "
Item	Operation/Explanation
Disp. /play	A Feel * Mail image is played back on the
new one	Private window after you receive an i-mode
	mail/SMS message.
	► ON or OFF
	● When this function is set to "OFF", a Feel *
	Mail icon does not appear on each record
	display, the Received Address List, the
	Inbox List, and the detailed Received Mail
	display even while "Disp. /play in history" is
	set to "ON".
Disp. /play in	A Feel * Mail icon appears on each record
history	display, the Received Address List, the Inbox
, in the second second	List, or the detailed Received Mail display.
	ON or OFF

Play Back Feel * Talk/Feel * Mail Image from Each Record Display

Select a record item which contains a Feel *
Talk or Feel * Mail icon from Redial, Dialed
Calls, Received Calls, or the Received
Address List, or show each detailed display.





display

 A Feel * Talk/Feel * Mail icon moves when it is selected or shown.

The Feel * Talk/Feel * Mail image is played back.

- ●To end the playback, press CLR.
- When you display the record display from another function, you cannot play back the Feel * Talk/Feel * Mail image by pressing (★) (★★*).

<ll>Illumination> Setting Color of Call/Charging Indicator and Others

MENU > Settings > Illumination

	ettings lllumination e following operations.
Item	Operation/Explanation
All illum. setting	You can set all illumination items at one time. Select a pattern.
Illumination	See page 111.
talk	You can set the flickering color of the Call/ Charging indicator for during a call. Use to select a color. The Call/Charging indicator flickers for confirmation while you are selecting. It flickers in the same color as it flickers during a call, while Record Message is working, during answer-hold (On Hold), or while a call is on hold (Holding).
Miss/unread illum.	The Call/Charging indicator flickers for missed calls, new mail messages, or new Messages R/F at about 5-second interval for about 30 minutes. ON or OFF
Music&Video ch illum.	The Call/Charging indicator flickers when obtaining Music&Video Channel programs is completed at about 5-second interval for about 30 minutes. ON or OFF
Illum. when folded	The Call/Charging indicator lights when the FOMA phone is closed. ON or OFF
Hourly illumination	You can be notified of the specified time (every hour at 0 minutes) by the tone and light of the Call/Charging indicator. Select a pattern. "Hourly illumination" does not work while a display other than the Stand-by display is shown, or Lock All or is activated, or Omakase Lock is activated. Time tone sounds at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". If "Step" is set, it sounds at Level 2.
MUSIC illumination	The Call/Charging indicator flickers for about 15 seconds when you start playback by MUSIC Player. ON or OFF
Bluetooth illumination	The Call/Charging indicator flickers during connecting to Bluetooth devices. ON or OFF It flickers at about 5-second interval for about 5 minutes when the connection is completed.
IC card illumination	The Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers when you place the FOMA phone over an IC card scanning device or during iC communication. ON or OFF

• It does not light/flicker during IC Card Lock.

Item	Operation/Explanation
PushTalk illumination	The Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers when you try to get the PushTalk talker's right, or when a member's state changes to "Connected". ON or OFF
Side key illumination	You can set the lighting color of the Call/ Charging indicator for when you press with the FOMA phone closed. ► Use to select a color. • The Call/Charging indicator lights for confirmation while you are selecting. • The lighting duration differs depending on the illumination.
Check settings	You can check the setting contents for "Illumination", "Illumination in talk", "Hourly illumination" and "Side key illumination".

Illumination



You can set the flickering color of the Call/Charging indicator according to the incoming type.

(MENU) Settings Illumination Illumination

► Do the following operations.	
Item	Operation/Explanation
Set color	Select an incoming type
	► Use to select a color.
	●To make the indicator light in colors "Color
	1" to "Color 12" in order, select "Gradation".
	●The Call/Charging indicator lights for
	confirmation while you are selecting.
Set pattern	You can set the flickering pattern of the
	Illumination.
	Select a pattern.
	Standard Flickers in the same
	pattern repeatedly.
	Melody linkage Flickers with the ring
	tone.
Color setting	► Edit color name ➤ Select a color
(Edit color	► Enter a name.
name)	● You can edit "Color 1" through "Color 12" only.
	●You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20
	half-pitch characters.
Color setting	► Adjust color tone ► Select a color
(Adjust color	► Adjust the color tone.
tone)	●You can adjust the color tone of "Color 1"
	through "Color 12" only.
	●Use 🔘 to select a color and use 🔘 to
	change the color tone.

Information

<Set color>

• The priority order of illumination is; "Setting for Phonebook entry" "Group setting" "Set color".

Information

<Set pattern>

- Even when "Melody linkage" is set, the Call/Charging indicator flickers by "Standard" in the following cases:
 - When "Set color" is set to other than "Color 1" through "Color 12" and "Gradation"
 - When an i-motion movie or melody with no flickering pattern is set for the ring tone

<Info Notice Setting>



Checking Missed Calls and New Mail by Tone and Call/Charging Indicator

When the FOMA phone is closed, you can press ▼ to check for missed calls, new mail, new chat mail, new Messages R/F, record messages, and voice mail messages. To use this function, you need to set "Side keys guard" to "OFF" in advance.

Settings Incoming call Info notice setting Select an item.

ON* . . . Notifies you whether there are missed calls, new mail, new chat mail, or new Messages R/F by the electronic sound and flickering of the Call/Charging indicator.

OFF Turns off the information notice.

※ When "Select language" is set to "日本語 (Japanese)", you can select "電子音 (electronic sound)" or "ボイス (voice)". With "ボイス (voice)", Japanese electronic voice and flickering of the Call/Charging indicator notify you of new chat mail, new mail, missed calls, record messages and voice mail messages in this order.

■If you press ▼ while the FOMA phone is closed When you have a missed call, new mail, new chat mail, or new Message R/F

(When the "Missed call" icon, "New mail" icon, "Chat mail", or "Message R/F" icon is displayed on the Stand-by display.) If "Info notice setting" is set to "ON", a double-beep tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights for about five seconds. If "Info notice setting" is set to " $\overrightarrow{\pi} \prec \lambda$ (voice)" in Japanese display, a beep tone sounds and a voice message announces that you have new mail, a missed call, and so on, and the Call/Charging indicator lights for about five seconds.

- When "Info notice setting" is set to "ボイス (voice)" in Japanese display, and a new Message R/F comes in, a voice message announces that you have new mail.
- If you press ▼ again while the voice is being played back, you can stop it.

When you have no missed calls, new mail, new chat mail, or new Message R/F

If "Info notice setting" is set to "ON", or "ボイス (voice)" in Japanese display, a triple-beep tone sounds, and the Call/ Charging indicator flickers for about five seconds.

Even when "Info notice setting" is set to " π 1 π 1 π 2 (voice)" in Japanese display, the notice is not made by voice.

Information

- You cannot check for the mail messages held at the i-mode Center by this function.
- The confirmation function might not work depending on the function being activated.
- The sound volume for electronic sound cannot be changed.
- ●"ボイス (voice)" sounds at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". If "Step" is set, the sound volume is Level 2.
- The missed call, new mail, and new chat mail are informed by both the Call/Charging indicator and the vibrator unless "Phone" of "Vibrator" has been set to "OFF".
- The vibrator notifies the information as follows:
 - Vibrates for about 1 second when you have a missed call, new mail, or new chat mail message.
 - Vibrates for about 0.2 second when you have no missed calls, new mail, or new chat mail message.
- If you open the FOMA phone during notification, it stops.

<Desktop Icon> Using Icons on Desktop

If you could not answer a call (missed call) or when you have new mail, icons notify you of the call or mail on the Stand-by display. (Notification icons)
Also, you can paste the phone numbers, mail addresses or other items you frequently use as icons. (Desktop icons)

Operation when a notification icon is selected

((4	Missed call
Miss 1	Shows the Missed Call List.
	(See page 54)
[((Missed call to Number B of 2in1
Miss 1	Shows the Missed Call List.
	(See page 54)
•	Record message
Msg	Shows the Record Message List. (See page 68)
Msg	Videophone record message
Msg	Shows the Videophone Record Message List.
	(See page 69)
	New i-mode mail or SMS
New 1	Shows the Inbox List. (See page 186)
S	New chat mail
New 1	Starts Chat Mail. (See page 205)
R	New Message R/F
New 1	Shows the Message R/F List. (See page 201)
F New 1	
QĽ	When i-αppli did not start automatically
Notrun	Shows the i-oppli Auto Start Info. (See page 221)
	When a ToruCa file is obtained from a scanning
New	device
	Shows the ToruCa File List. (See page 226)

Error	When a security error occurred on the i-αppli Stand-by display Shows the Security Error History. (See page 212)
Update	Success in downloading a Music&Video Channel program Activates Music&Video Channel. (See page 316)
Fail	Failure in downloading a Music&Video Channel program Activates Music&Video Channel. (See page 317)
Miss	Missed alarm Shows the contents of the alarm that could not be notified. (See page 337)
Miss	Missed program Shows the contents of the booked program that could not be notified. (See page 256)
REC	When timer recording was completed Shows the contents and results of the timer recording. (See page 256)
VM	When Messages are held at the Voice Mail Center Shows the display for Voice Mail. (See page 364)
Update	When the Phonebook could not be updated by Data Security Service Shows the update display for Data Security Service. (See page 95)
Complete	When Provide Location was executed automatically Shows Location History. (See page 238)
Fail	When Provide Location could not be executed automatically Shows Location History. (See page 238)
Miss	When you did not respond to a location provision request Shows Location History. (See page 238)
Update	When Software Update is needed Starts Software Update. (See page 437)
	When Software Update was executed Shows the Update Completion display or the reason for not completing. (See page 436)
Auto-update	When Software rewriting is possible Shows the rewriting confirmation display. (See page 435)
Update	When pattern data was updated automatically Shows the updated result. (See page 441)
UŠB	When the FOMA phone and a personal computer are connected by the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option) Shows the display for setting "USB mode setting". (See page 300)

■Operation when a desktop icon is selected

6 ,	Phone number
	Shows the Dialing display with the phone number
	entered. (See page 50 and page 76)
V°	URL of site
	Shows the site of that URL. (See page 152)
	URL for Full Browser
	Shows the site of that URL by Full Browser.
	(See page 260)

\succeq	Sender's/Destination address of i-mode mail
	Shows the Message Composition display with the
	mail address entered. (See page 172)
	Sender's/Destination address of SMS
	Shows the SMS Composition display with the mail
	address entered. (See page 206)
	i-appli
	Starts the i-αppli program. (See page 211)
*	Picture
	Shows it on the Picture viewer. (See page 274)
	i-motion movie
(31	Plays it back by the i-motion player. (See page 280)
ii 💻	Video file
	Plays it back by the Video player. (See page 286)
- Inc	
Ľ	Chara-den image
~	Plays it back by the Chara-den player. (See page 288)
1	Melody
	Plays it back by the Melody player. (See page 290)
	PDF file
	Shows it on the PDF viewer. (See page 307)
	ToruCa file
	Shows it on the ToruCa viewer. (See page 226)
@	使いかたナビ (Guide)
	Shows the 使いかたナビ (Guide) display. (See page 36)
0	Camera menu
	Shows the Camera menu. (See page 139 and page 141)
■ 3 0 o	Bar Code Reader
_	Shows the Bar Code Reader menu. (See page 147)
□	Text Reader
■ 3	Text Reader Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149)
	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel
	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display.
- III	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316)
	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function
- III	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display.
Î	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306)
- III	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule
(i)	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule Shows the Calendar display. (See page 338)
Î	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule Shows the Calendar display. (See page 338) ToDo
	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule Shows the Calendar display. (See page 338) ToDo Shows the ToDo List. (See page 340)
(i)	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule Shows the Calendar display. (See page 338) ToDo Shows the ToDo List. (See page 340) Bluetooth function
	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule Shows the Calendar display. (See page 338) ToDo Shows the ToDo List. (See page 340) Bluetooth function Shows the Bluetooth Function Selection display.
	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule Shows the Calendar display. (See page 338) ToDo Shows the ToDo List. (See page 340) Bluetooth function Shows the Bluetooth Function Selection display. (See page 350, page 351, and page 353)
	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule Shows the Calendar display. (See page 338) ToDo Shows the ToDo List. (See page 340) Bluetooth function Shows the Bluetooth Function Selection display. (See page 350, page 351, and page 353) Private menu
₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule Shows the Calendar display. (See page 338) ToDo Shows the ToDo List. (See page 340) Bluetooth function Shows the Bluetooth Function Selection display. (See page 350, page 351, and page 353)
₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩ ₩	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule Shows the Calendar display. (See page 338) ToDo Shows the ToDo List. (See page 340) Bluetooth function Shows the Bluetooth Function Selection display. (See page 350, page 351, and page 353) Private menu
	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule Shows the Calendar display. (See page 338) ToDo Shows the ToDo List. (See page 340) Bluetooth function Shows the Bluetooth Function Selection display. (See page 350, page 351, and page 353) Private menu Shows the Private menu. (See page 341)
**************************************	Shows the Text Reader menu. (See page 149) Music&Video Channel Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 316) Ir data receiving function Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 305 and page 306) Schedule Shows the Calendar display. (See page 338) ToDo Shows the ToDo List. (See page 340) Bluetooth function Shows the Bluetooth Function Selection display. (See page 350, page 351, and page 353) Private menu Shows the Private menu. (See page 341) Text memo

Paste Icons to Desktop

You can paste up to 15 desktop icons of such as phone numbers, mail addresses, etc.

The display for an item to be pasted ► (FUNC) ► Add desktop icon ► YES

 When the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, select a mail address or phone number to be pasted.

Information

- You may not be able to paste the URL to the desktop depending on the site.
- You can store the title for URL of up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters. When the number of characters for the title exceeds that much, the characters in excess are deleted. If no title exists for a site, up to 22 half-pitch characters of the URL excluding "http://" or "https://" is displayed.
- Some files and data might not be pasted to the desktop.

Proceed to Respective Functions from Icons on Desktop

Press []



Use (to highlight an icon, and press



icon is selected

- •Up to five "Desktop icons" are displayed. If there are six or more icons, " (a)" and " (b)" are displayed.
- A "Notification icon" is deleted when each function is executed. To delete all "Notification icons", press and hold (CLR) for at least one second from the display in step 1.

Information

• When the notification icon of "Messages are held at the Voice Mail Center" (🌉) appears while you are overseas, you cannot operate the Voice Mail function from the notification icon. Follow the steps of "Operate Voice Mail Service from the Country You Stay" on page 392.

Check Details of Desktop Icon 63



MENU ► Settings ➤ Display ➤ Desktop icon

The list of desktop icons pasted to the desktop is displayed.



Desktop Icon List

Select the icon whose details are to be displayed.

Function Menu of the Desktop Icon List

 You can bring up the Function menu also by pressing [**E**CC] (FUNC), while highlighting a desktop icon from the Stand-by display.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Edit title	► Enter a title.
	 You can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters. However, the number of characters for the title displayed when you highlight the icon is up to 11 full-pitch/ 22 half-pitch characters from the beginning of the title.
Reset desktop	The desktop icons are reset to the default. YES
Delete this	►YES
Delete all	YES

MENU (6) (6) **Changing Character Font**

MENU ► Settings ► Display ► Font Font 1 or Font 2

- Some characters such as Kanji are displayed in "Font 1" regardless of this function.
- You cannot change the font of a phone number entry or clock display.

Change Character Font of Phone Numbers

You can set the font of phone numbers displayed on the following display:

- · Dialing/Call Receiving display
- · Detailed Dialed/Received Call display
- · Detailed Redial display
- · Detailed Sent Chaku-moji Message display
- When you use 2in1, the setting here applies to the font for Number A. To specify the font for Number B, operate "Set call/receive No. (Disp. call/receive No.)" of "2in1 setting".
- Settings Incoming call

 Disp. call/receive No. Select a font.

Character Sizes Changing Character Size

Settings Display Character size Do the following operations.

	e ronowing operations.	
Item	Operation/Explanation	
Enlarge font	You can set all the items of "Character size" at	
display	a time.	
	Large, Standard, or Small	
	• A confirmation display might appear asking	
	whether to change the character size of the	
	menu as well. If you select "YES", the menu	
	icon is set to "Enlarge menu" when you have	
	set to "Large", and it returns to the default	
	when you have set "Standard" or "Small".	
	• When you select "Small", "Phonebook",	
	"Dialed/recv. calls" and "Character input (Character size)" are set to "Standard".	
	· ·	
Mail	You can set the character size for the text of	
	the detailed mail display or detailed Message	
R/F display.		
	Large, Standard, or SmallThe setting here applies to "Character size"	
	of Mail Settings.	
	While a sent or received mail message is	
	displayed, press 3, or press	
	(FUNC) and select "Display", then	
	select "Character size".	
	You cannot change the character size of	
	Decomail-pictographs.	
	 While the mail text is displayed, you can 	
	change character size also by pressing and	
	holding O for at least one second. (See	
	page 182 and page 207) In this case, the	
	setting here also changes.	
	• When you set to "Large", the characters on	
	the Folder List and the Inbox/Outbox/Draft	

List are displayed in large size as well.

Item	Operation/Explanation
i-mode	You can set the character size displayed on
	sites and screen memos.
	Large, Standard, or Small
	● The setting here applies to "Character size"
	of i-mode Settings.
Phonebook	You can set the character size for the
	Phonebook display.
	► Large or Standard
	● You can set also by MENU Phonebook
	► Phonebook settings ► Character size
	► Phonebook.
Dialed/recv.	You can set the character size for the Redial/
calls	Dialed Call/Received Call/Sent Address/
	Received Address List.
	► Large or Standard
	●You can set also by MENU Phonebook
	► Phonebook settings ► Character size
	Dialed/recv. calls.
Character	You can set the character size for the
input	character entry display, Message
(Character	Composition display, or SMS Composition
size)	display.
	► Character size ► Large or Standard
Character	You can set the character size of the
input	conversion candidate list that is shown below
(Candid. disp.	the Character Entry (Edit) display.
size)	► Chandid. disp. size
	Large, Standard, or Small
	•The setting here applies to "Candid. disp.
	size" of the Function menu while entering
	(editing) characters.
	-·

■When the character size is set, the display appears as shown below:

<For mail>



- If you select "YES" from the confirmation display asking whether to enlarge the font when switching to Simple Menu, "Large" is set.
- When "Large" is set, some item names displayed for each operating procedure differ from the ones displayed when "Standard" or "Small" is set.



Setting Clock Display

You can set whether to display the clock on the Stand-by display and can set its display pattern.

Settings Display Display setting Clock Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Clock display	► Big, Small, or OFF
	● The setting here does not change the clock
	size on the Private window, World Time
	Watch, or the sub clock.
Day of week	When "Select language" is set to "日本語
	(Japanese)", you can select "日本語
	(Japanese)" or "英語 (English)".
	● The setting here applies also to the clock
	display on the Private window (see page 31).
	●If you set to "英語 (English)", region names
	of World Time Watch are also displayed in
	English.
Position	Select a pattern.
Color	► Black or White

Information

<Position>

- Even if you set any of "Pattern 3" through "Pattern 13", the clock is displayed in "Pattern 2" in the following cases:
 - · When you set the calendar for the Stand-by display
 - When World Time Watch or the sub clock is displayed under the clock on the Stand-by display[※]
 - When a carrier name is displayed on the Stand-by display by "Operator name display"
 - · When "time zone" of "Set time" is not set to "GMT +9".*
 - · During Lock All
 - During Omakase Lock
- Even if you set to "Pattern 1", the clock is displayed in "Pattern 2".
- If you set "Pattern 1", the settings of "Clock display" and "Day of week" are invalid.

Security Settings

Passwords	
Passwords	118
Changing Terminal Security Code	119
Setting PIN Code	119
Releasing PIN Lock	119
Restricting Operations or Functions	
Locking your Phone to Prevent Use by Others	120
Using Omakase LockOmakase Lock	120
Using Self ModeSelf Mode>	121
Locking Functions Regarding Personal InformationPersonal Data Lock	121
Setting a Variety of Locks	122
Using Face ReaderFace Reader Setting>	123
Locking Keypad Dial	125
Preventing Side Key Operation ErrorsSide Keys Guard	125
Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls or Messages	
Setting not to Display Redial/Received Calls	125
Protecting Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events from Prying Eyes	
	126
Applying Secret for Mail in Outbox/Inbox	126
Setting not to Display Mail in Outbox/Inbox without Permission (Mail Security)	126
Setting Restrictions on Phonebook Entries	127
Setting Response to Incoming Calls without Caller ID Call Setting without ID>	128
Delaying Start of Ringing Operation	128
Rejecting Calls from Phone Numbers which are not Stored in Phonebooks	
	129
What is Data Security Service?	129
Other "Security Settings"	
Other "Security Settings"	130
Other Decurity Detailings	150

Passwords

For some functions of the FOMA phone, you need to enter your password. In addition to the Terminal Security Code for operating respective mobile phone functions, the Network Security Code to use network services, and i-mode password are available. These passwords help you utilize your FOMA phone.

■Cautions on passwords

- You should avoid using the numbers for passwords such as denoting your birth date, part of your phone number, local address number, room number, "1111" or "1234" that is easily decoded by a third party. Also make sure that you take a note of the passwords you have selected just in case you forget them.
- Take care not to let others know your passwords. Even if your passwords are known and used by a third party, we at DoCoMo take no responsibility in any event for the resultant loss.
- Note that we at DoCoMo will never make any inquiries about your passwords.
- If you do not remember your respective passwords, you need to bring an identification card such as your driver's license, the FOMA phone and UIM to the handing counter of a DoCoMo shop.

For details contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

Terminal Security Code

The Terminal Security Code is set to "0000" at purchase but you can change it by yourself. (See page 119) When the display for entering the Terminal Security Code appears, enter your four- to eight-digit code and press ()(Set).

 When you enter your Terminal Security Code, the entered numbers are indicated by "_" and not displayed.



• If you have entered wrong numbers or nothing for about 15 seconds, a warning tone sounds and a warning message is displayed; then the display prior to entering the Terminal Security Code returns. Check the correct code and retry entering numbers.

Network Security Code

The Network Security Code is a four-digit number for procedures on DoCoMo e-site or for using network services. This is determined at the time of contract but can be changed by yourself.

If you have "DoCoMo ID/Password" for "My DoCoMo", the overall support site for personal computers, you can use a personal computer to take proceedings of changing your Network Security Code to new one. Also, you can change it by yourself from "各種手続き (procedures)" on DoCoMo e-site by using the i-mode phone.

For "My DoCoMo" and "DoCoMo e-site (ドコモeサイト)", see the back page of this manual.

i-mode Password

You need to enter the four-digit "i-mode password" for registering or deleting My Menu, applying for or canceling Message Services, i-mode pay service, and so on.

(Some information providers may provide you with their specific password.)

The i-mode password is "0000" at the time of your contract, but you can change it by yourself. (See page 156)

From i-mode, you can change the i-mode password by following operation:

"

Menu" → "English iMenu" → "Options" → "Change i-mode Password"

PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code

For the UIM, you can set the two security codes, namely the PIN1 code and PIN2 code.

These security codes are "0000" at the time of your contract, but you can change them by yourself. (See page 119)

The PIN1 code is the four- to eight-digit number for checking the user each time the UIM is inserted into the FOMA phone or each time the FOMA phone is turned on, so that you can prevent the third party from using your UIM. By entering your PIN1 code, you can make or answer calls, or use functions in the FOMA phone. The PIN2 code is the four- to eight-digit number for executing Reset Total Cost, using the user certificate or applying for the issue of it, etc.

 If you purchase a new FOMA phone and use the existing UIM with the new FOMA phone, use the PIN1 code and PIN2 code you have set previously.

When the PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code Entry display appears, enter your four- to eight-digit PIN1 code/PIN2 code and press (Set).

- ◆The entered PIN1 code or PIN2 code is displayed as "_".
- If you enter a wrong PIN1 code or PIN2 code three times in succession, it is locked and the FOMA phone cannot be used. (The remaining number of times you can enter appears on the display.)



For PIN1 code

When you enter the correct PIN1 code or PIN2 code, the remaining number of times you can enter will return to three times.

 You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even from the PIN1/PIN2 Code Entry display.

PUK (PIN Unblock Code)

The PUK (PIN unblock code) is the eight-digit number for releasing the PIN1 code and PIN2 code lock state. You cannot change this code by yourself.

• If you enter a wrong PUK (PIN unblock code) 10 times in succession, the UIM is locked.

Security when the power turns on

Operation of user certificate Connecting to FirstPass sites

Enter PIN1 code

Enter PIN2 code

Wrong entry 3 times in succession

Enter PUK (PIN unblock code)

Entry OK

Wrong entry 10 times in succession

Set new PIN code

Consult the handling counter of a DoCoMo shop

<Change Security Code>



Changing Terminal Security Code

Change the default for the Terminal Security Code required for operating functions to your own four- to eight-digit code so that you can make full use of the FOMA phone. Make sure you take a note of the security code you have changed just in case you forget it.

- Settings ► Lock/Security
 - ► Change security code
 - ► Enter the current Terminal Security Code.
 - If you enter the code for the first time, enter "0000".
- 2 Enter a new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits) > YES

SettingSettingPINCode

PIN1 Code Entry Set

You can set the FOMA phone not to work unless you enter your PIN1 code when turning on the power.

- **1** MENU ► Settings ► Lock/Security ► UIM setting
 - ► Enter your Terminal Security Code
 - ► PIN1 code entry set ► ON or OFF
 - ► Enter the PIN1 code.
 - See page 118 for the PIN1 code.

Change PIN1 Code/Change PIN2 Code

You need to have set "PIN1 code entry set" to "ON" to change the PIN1 code.

- Settings Lock/Security UIM setting
 - Enter your Terminal Security Code
 - ► Change PIN1 code/Change PIN2 code
 - ► Enter the current PIN1 code or PIN2 code.
 - See page 118 for the PIN1 code or PIN2 code.
- 2 Enter a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code (four to eight digits).
 - The entered PIN1 code or PIN2 code is displayed as
- 2 Enter the new PIN1 code/PIN2 code again.

Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter a wrong PIN1 code/PIN2 code three times in succession on the display requiring its entry, it is locked and the FOMA phone cannot be used. In this case, release the PIN1 code/PIN2 code lock and set a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code.

- Enter the PUK (PIN unblock code) (eight digits).
 - The entered unblock code is displayed as "_".
 - You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even from the PUK Entry display.



- 2 Enter a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code (four to eight digits).
 - The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as "_".
- 2 Enter the new PIN1 code/PIN2 code again.

Lock All> Locking your Phone to Prevent

Use by Others

If you set Lock All, you can do no operations other than answering calls and turning on/off the power.

- Settings Lock/Security Lock all Enter your Terminal Security Code.
 - " 🖟 " and "Lock all" appear and Lock All is set.
 - To release Lock All, enter your Terminal Security Code from the Stand-by display. Even if you turn off the power, Lock All will not be released.

Information

- You cannot make calls during Lock All. However, you can make emergency calls at 110/119/118. Select "YES" from the confirmation display for dialing.
- You can receive calls, but the callers' data such as their names and images stored in the Phonebook are not displayed except for their phone numbers. Further, the ring tone sounds in "Pattern 1".
- GPS Location Provision is available even during Lock All.
- If you fail to release Lock All five times in succession, the power to the FOMA phone turns off. However, you can turn it on again.
- ●You can receive mail messages or Messages R/F during Lock All; however, the Receiving or Reception Result display for incoming mail messages and Messages R/F does not appear. The icons such as "☑", "♠", or "♠" appear after Lock All is released.
- The desktop icon disappears during Lock All. When Lock All is released, the icon reappears.
- The tickers of i-Channel are not displayed during Lock All.
- The default Wake-up display appears during Lock All even when an i-motion movie has been set for the Wake-up display.
- Even if you set Lock All, IC Card Lock is not activated.

<Omakase Lock> Using Omakase Lock

When you have lost your FOMA phone or in other cases, you can use this service to remotely lock your FOMA phone by contacting DoCoMo or by operating from My DoCoMo. Your privacy and Osaifu-Keitai are protected.

To release the lock, contact DoCoMo by phone, etc.

- ※ Omakase Lock is a pay service. However, you are not charged if you apply for this service at the same time as applying for the suspension of the use or during the suspension.
- Even during Omakase Lock, your FOMA phone corresponds to the location provision request of GPS function if "Location request menu" is set to "ON".

■Setting/Releasing Omakase Lock

00 0120-524-360 Business hours: 24 hours

- ※You can set/release also from My DoCoMo site via a personal computer or other devices.
- For details on Omakase Lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Service]".

"Omakase lock" is displayed on the Stand-by display and Omakase Lock is set.



- Omakase Lock is the service that locks the FOMA phone in which your contracted UIM is inserted.
- During Omakase Lock, all the key operations are locked except for answering voice calls/videophone calls, turning on/off the power, adjusting the earpiece volume and adjusting the ring volume, and respective functions (including IC card functions) are disabled.
- You can receive voice calls and videophone calls (except PushTalk calls), but the callers' data such as names and images stored in the Phonebook are not displayed except for their phone numbers. In addition, the ring image, ring tone, and vibrator are reset to the default.
- When you release Omakase Lock, the former settings return.
- Mail messages received during Omakase Lock are held at the Mail Center.
- You can turn on/off the power, however, Omakase Lock is not released by turning off the power.
- GPS Location Provision is available even during Omakase
 Lock
- Note that neither the UIM nor the microSD memory card is locked.

- Even while another function is working, Omakase Lock applies after finishing that function.
- Omakase Lock can be set even when another lock function is set. However, if you have set Public Mode (Drive Mode) before setting Omakase Lock, you cannot receive voice calls and videophone calls.
- Omakase Lock cannot be set when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, turned off, or during Self Mode.

Information

- When you have signed up for Dual Network Service and are using the mova phone, Omakase Lock cannot be set.
- Omakase Lock is a service that is activated by an offer from the contractor of the UIM inserted in the FOMA phone. Even when the contractor and the user of the FOMA phone differ, the FOMA phone will be locked if the contractor offers to DoCoMo.
- You can release Omakase Lock only when the UIM of the same phone number at locking is inserted in your FOMA phone. If you cannot release it, contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

<Self Mode> Using Self Mode

You can disable all phone calls and communication functions.

During Self Mode, the caller hears the guidance to the effect that radio waves do not reach or the power is turned off. If you use DoCoMo Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can use these services in the same way as when the FOMA phone is turned off.



- "**SEIf**" appears and Self Mode is set.
- To release Self Mode, perform the same operation.

Information

- You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even during Self Mode. In this case, Self Mode is released.
- You cannot receive mail messages, Area Mail messages, or Messages R/F during Self Mode.
- Even if a call comes in during Self Mode, the "Missed call" icon does not appear after releasing Self Mode.

Personal Data Lock> Locking Functions Regarding Personal Information

To prevent other people from reading or tampering with your personal information, you can set the following functions not to be used:

- · Record message
- · Play/Erase msg.
- · Select image
- · Remote monitoring
- · PushTalk phonebook
- · Add to phonebook
- · Group setting
- · No. of phonebook
- Phonebook settings
- · Search phonebook
- Voice dial
- · Voice announce
- · Kisekae tool
- Feel image playback
- Desktop
- Restrictions
- · Reject unknown
- Camera
- · Bar code reader
- Text reader
- · i-mode
- Bookmark
- · i-Channel
- Mail
- · Photo-sending
- · Mail group
- Chat group
- i-αppli
- · IC card content
- · ToruCa
- · GPS function

- · One Seg
- · Full browser
- · PC movie
- · Still image
- · Moving image
- Video
- · Chara-den
- Melody
- · microSD memory card
- Infrared data exchange
- · iC communication
- · PDF viewer
- · Document viewer
- · Music&Video Channel
- · MUSIC
- MUSIC player
- Alarm
- · Schedule
- ToDo
- · Alarm setting
- · Own number
- Voice memo
- · Movie memo
- · Text memo
- UIM operation
- · Reset settings
- Initialize
- "Number setting" and "Set as ring tone" for Multi number
- · Data transfer

Settings Lock/Security Personal data lock

► Enter your Terminal Security Code.

" appears and Personal Data Lock is set.

●To release Personal Data Lock, perform the same operation. When you set to "Timer lock at close", the display for releasing Personal Data Lock appears also by opening the FOMA phone.

When you set "PIM/IC security mode" to "Face reader", follow the operation of "Use Face Reader to Release Lock" on page 124.

When you set to "Double security", enter your Terminal Security Code after the operation on the page 124.

■To temporally release Personal Data Lock

When you select a function which cannot be used during Personal Data Lock, the display for entering your Terminal Security Code appears depending on the function. When you enter your Terminal Security Code, " " is cleared and you can temporarily use the function.

 When you show the Stand-by display with any menu function not activated, Personal Data Lock is set again.

Information

- You can automatically receive Messages R/F, i-mode mail messages, chat mail messages, and SMS messages during Personal Data Lock; however, the Receiving or Reception Result display does not appear. Further, the receiving operation such as ringing/vibration does not work, so you are not notified of receiving. The icons such as "☑", "ℝ", or "ℙ" appear after Personal Data Lock is released.
- During Personal Data Lock, the "Notification icon" and "Desktop icon" such as "New mail", "Missed alarm", "Phone number", "URL" and "Mail address" do not appear, however, they reappear when you release Personal Data Lock.
- During Personal Data Lock, you cannot check a missed call or new mail by pressing ▼ with the FOMA phone closed.
- During Personal Data Lock, the "Pre-installed" substitute image is sent to the other party if you send the substitute image during a videophone call.
- If you set "Lock all" during Personal Data Lock, " " is cleared and " []" appears instead.

<Lock Setting> Setting a Variety of Locks

Timer Lock ON at Close

You can set "Timer lock at close" that automatically activates Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock when the specified time has elapsed after closing your FOMA phone.

- **1** MENU ► Settings ► Lock/Security
 - ► Lock setting ► Timer lock ON at close
 - ► Enter your Terminal Security Code
 - ► Personal data lock or IC card lock
 - Select an elapse time.

If you set to other than "OFF", " appears and then Timer Lock At Close is activated.

After the lock is activated, the Lock Release display appears when you open the FOMA phone.

Information

• When the Stand-by display is not shown, or when another function is working with the Stand-by display shown, the lock is not activated even after the specified time elapses. However, when another function ends after closing the FOMA phone, the lock is activated after the specified time elapses.

Information

- When a call or mail message comes in after closing the FOMA phone, or when you open it, the elapsed time counter returns to 0 seconds.
- When this function is activated, the lock is temporarily released if you release each lock. However, it is re-locked when the specified time elapses after closing the FOMA phone.

PIM/IC Security Mode

You can set the way to release Personal Data Lock and IC Card Lock.

- **1** MENU ► Settings ► Lock/Security
 - ► Lock setting ► PIM/IC security mode
 - ► Enter your Terminal Security Code
 - > Select a security mode.

Security code

. . .Enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock. The setting is completed.

Face reader

... Use Face Reader authentication to release the lock.

Double security

. . .Enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock after using Face Reader authentication. The setting is completed.

YES

Information

 You cannot change PIM/IC Security Mode when the face data files stored by Face Reader Setting are fewer than three, or during Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock.

<Face Reader Setting> Using Face Reader

You can store your face data files in Face Reader and use it for authentication when releasing IC Card Lock or Personal Data Lock. To use Face Reader, you need to store three or more face data files and set "PIM/IC security mode" to either "Face reader" or "Double security".

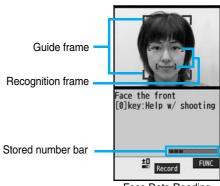
■Notes on using Face Reader

- •The dirty camera might result in erroneous operation. Use this function after wiping it with a soft cloth to clean the dirt off
- In environment where the face is exposed to strong light and the brightness significantly differs depending on the region of the face, the face will not be recognized easily. In this case, storing might become difficult or the recognition rate (the rate of correct identification) might be lowered. Adjust so that the face is exposed to even light.
- The face might not be recognized normally when its entire part is exposed to the light and becomes white.
- Storing the face might become difficult or the recognition rate might be lowered when the face conditions are as described below:
 - When the features of the face (eyes, mouth, nose, and eyebrows, etc.) are hard to see as they are covered by hair, glasses, or a mask
 - When the brightness significantly differs depending on the region of the face such as when you are under the light in a dark place
- •The recognition rate might rise by reacting in accordance with the face conditions such as by raising the hair so that the eyes, nose, mouth, and eyebrows are clearly visible (taking the glasses and mask off) or moving to a place where the face is exposed to even light. The recognition rate rises also by storing the face data file additionally.
- The face authentication technology does not completely guarantee that you are recognized as yourself. Accordingly, we are not at all responsible for damages resulting from the use of this product by a third party or when the damages are caused by what you could not use the function because of wrong authentication by Face Reader.

Store

To use Face Reader, store 3 or more face data files. You can store up to 10 face data files.

- Settings Lock/Security
 - ► Lock setting ► Face reader setting
 - ► Enter your Terminal Security Code ► Store
 - **OK**



Face Data Reading display

Face to the front, and locate the face within the guide frame. You can prevent the failure in authenticating the face data file, which results from the difference in the position of the face at storing and authenticating the data. When your face is recognized, the recognition frame for the eyes and mouth is displayed and the guide frame becomes green. When the recognition frame is not displayed or it comes off your eyes and mouth, place your face off the frame; then change the facing direction of your face to correctly display the recognition frame.

• The number of face data files is displayed by the bar on the Face Data Reading display.

Press (Record).

The face data file is shot.

Press (Store).

The face data file you have shot is stored. Repeat step 1 through step 3 to store three or more face data files.

- When the third face data file is stored, the message appears telling that Face Reader can be more easily used by adding face data file.
- When you press CLR, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the face data file.
- If you try to store the face data file in the same environment, you might not be able to store it. Change the direction of the face or the place for shooting.

Information

• At shooting, the Call/Charging indicator flickers in red and the shutter tone sounds regardless of the Manner Mode setting. The sound volume for shutter tone cannot be changed. Furthermore, the shutter tone does not sound during playback of a music file by MUSIC Player, or playback of a program by Music&Video Channel, or in pause state.

Function menu Brightness At Face reader start-up ± 0 You can adjust to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright). Select a brightness level. • You can adjust brightness also by pressing 3 from the Face Data Reading display. Help You can check the cautions for shooting. • You can bring up Help also by pressing

(O) from the Face Data Reading display.

Function Menu of the Face Data Reading Display

Delete Stored Images

You can reset all the face data files stored in Face Reader.

MENU
 Settings ► Lock/Security

- ► Lock setting ► Face reader setting
- ► Enter your Terminal Security Code
- ▶ Delete stored images ▶ YES

Information

- You cannot reset the face data files during Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock.
- When you reset the face data files, "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Security code".

Recognition-failed Image

The images not judged as yourself by Face Reader recognition operation are saved. You can use these images to specify who tried to illegally access your data.

The image is overwritten every time recognition-failed image is made.

- Settings Lock/Security
 - ► Lock setting ► Face reader setting
 - ► Enter your Terminal Security Code
 - ➤ Recog. failed image ➤ Select an image.
 - To delete the recognition-failed images, press (FUNC), select "Delete this", and then select "YES".

Face Reader Security

You can set Face Reader to additionally recognize blinking of the eyes.

- Settings ► Lock/Security
 - ► Lock setting ► Face reader setting
 - ► Enter your Terminal Security Code
 - ► Face reader security ► Normal or High

Normal . . . Does not recognize blinking of the eyes. **High** Recognizes blinking of the eyes.

Change Security Code

You can set a password to be entered instead of the Face Reader authentication for when "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader" or "Double security".

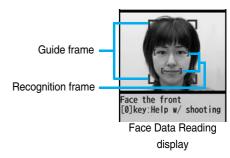
- Settings Lock/Security
 - ► Lock setting ► Face reader setting
 - ► Enter your Terminal Security Code
 - ➤ Change security code ➤ Enter the current Face Reader Security Code.
 - If you enter the code for the first time, enter "0000".
- 2 Enter a new Face Reader Security Code (four to eight digits) ➤ YES

Use Face Reader to Release Lock

When "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader", use Face Reader to release the lock instead of using your Terminal Security Code.

When it is set to "Double security", use Face Reader for authentication and then enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock.

Display for releasing Personal Data Lock/IC Card Lock Match the face to the guide frame and press (Start).



Face to the front, and locate the face within the guide frame. The recognition frame for the eyes and mouth is displayed, and the guide frame becomes green. When the recognition frame is not displayed or it comes off, place your face off the frame; then change the facing direction of your face to correctly display the recognition frame

- Perform the operation for authentication with the same facial expression as when you stored the face data file.
- Press (☑)(Scrtycd) and enter your Face Reader Security Code; then you can operate to authenticate instead of using Face Reader.

For the Face Reader Security Code, see page 124.

■If you failed to be authenticated

When additional storing of the face data file is possible, select "OK" to bring up the confirmation display asking whether to store additional face data file. Select "YES", enter your Terminal Security Code; then you can store additional face data file. When you cannot store any more face data files, select "OK" to show the Face Data Reading display. If the shot face is judged as another person, a shutter tone sounds and the recognition-failed image is saved. Select "OK" to show the Face Data Reading display. Try authentication using Face Reader again.

 When 10 face data files are stored and a new data file is added, the oldest data file is overwritten.

■When "Face reader security" is set to "High"

After you are successfully authenticated by Face Reader, your eye blinking is checked. Repeat blinking your eyes slowly. When the detection of eye blinking fails, the authentication also fails.

 Even in the same environment as that for the authentication by Face Reader, the detection of eye blinking may fail. Change the place or the direction of your face, and then operate.

<Keypad Dial Lock> Locking Keypad Dial

You can lock dialing from the numeric keys. When using the FOMA phone for business purposes, private use of the FOMA phone can be prevented.

Unavailable operations

- · Dialing from the numeric keys
- Initial setting
- Phonebook (storing, editing, deleting, copying from the microSD memory card, sending/receiving using Infrared rays, sending/receiving using iC communication, and sending/receiving using Bluetooth communication)
- · Phone To/AV Phone To function
- · Mail To function

■ Available operations

- · Dialing from the Phonebook or Voice Dial
- Dialing from Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, Sent Address, or Received Address (Only phone numbers stored in the Phonebook)
- Settings Lock/Security
 - Keypad dial lock
 - Enter your Terminal Security Code.
 - " is displayed and Keypad Dial Lock is set.
 - ◆To release Keypad Dial Lock, perform the same operation.

Information

 You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 using numeric keys even during Keypad Dial Lock.

Information

 If you set Keypad Dial Lock, you can send mail only when the address is called up from the Phonebook and when the address stored in the Phonebook is called up from Sent Address or Received Address.

Side Keys Guard> Preventing Side Key Operation Errors

You can disable the side keys (♣), ♠, and ▼ for when the FOMA phone is closed.

You can prevent operation errors in a bag.

(for at least one second)

- "appears and "Side keys guard" is set to "ON".
- To set to "OFF", perform the same operation.

Information

- Even when "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", you can answer an incoming PushTalk call by pressing ₱. You can get the talker's right by pressing ₱ during the PushTalk communication.
- When an external device such as the Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, the function of the side keys is valid regardless of this setting.

<Record Display Set> Setting not to Display Redial/ Received Calls

- Settings Incoming call
 - ► Record display set
 - ► Enter your Terminal Security Code
 - Select an item.

Received calls. Sets whether to display Received

Calls and Received Address.

Redial/Dialed calls . . . Sets whether to display Redial,

Dialed Calls and Sent Address.

ON or OFF

 When you set "Received calls" to "OFF", you cannot play back record messages of voice calls, either.

<Secret Mode> <Secret Data Only> Protecting Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events from Prying Eyes

In ordinary mode, you cannot access/refer to Phonebook entries or schedule events stored as secret data. In Secret Mode, you can select whether to store the stored/edited Phonebook entries/schedule events as secret data or as ordinary data. The Phonebook entries/schedule events you have stored/edited in Secret Data Only are stored as secret data.

You can access/refer to all the data files in Secret Mode but can access/refer to only the secret data files in Secret Data Only.

Activate Secret Mode Activate Secret Data Only



Settings Lock/Security

- Secret mode or Secret data only
- Enter your Terminal Security Code.

When "Secret mode" is selected, " appears and Secret Mode is activated.

When "Secret data only" is selected, " blinks, the number of stored secret data items is displayed, and then Secret Data Only is activated.

- If you call up a Phonebook entry or schedule event in Secret Mode, "a" stays lit for ordinary data and "a" blinks for secret data.
- To deactivate Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, perform the same operation or press from the Stand-by display.

■To change secret data to an ordinary Phonebook entry or schedule event

In Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, select "Release secret" from the Function menu of the Phonebook entry or schedule event to be released.

Information

- You can store FOMA phone's Phonebook entries only as secret data.
- When you make a call to the party stored as secret data, his/her name is not displayed but the phone number is displayed on the Dialing/Talking display.
- If you call up a secret entry to make a call or send mail, the record is not stored in "Redial", "Dialed calls" or "Sent address".
- If you simultaneously activate "Lock all" and "Secret mode" or "Secret data only", deactivating "Lock all" deactivates "Secret mode" or "Secret data only".

Secret Mail Display> Applying Secret for Mail in Outbox/Inbox

You can set whether to display the mail (secret mail) message from the sender or to the destination address that matches secret data in the Phonebook.

Mail settings ➤ Secret mail display ➤ Enter your Terminal Security Code

► ON or OFF

Information

- Even when "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", you can check secret mail in Secret Mode or in Secret Data Only.
- When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", and any secret address is included in addresses of simultaneous mail, that mail message is not displayed.
- When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", and any secret member is included in chat members, chat mail messages of all chat members are not displayed.
- When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", Area Mail messages are not displayed in Secret Data Only.

<Mail Security> Setting not to Display Mail in Outbox/Inbox without Permission

You can set the security function for the Inbox, Outbox and Draft of the Mail menu.

You need to enter your Terminal Security Code to display the mail messages in security-activated boxes.

- Mail settings ► Mail security
 - Enter your Terminal Security Code
 - ▶ Put a check mark for boxes to be set
 - ► (Finish)

Information

• If you set security for the Outbox and Inbox, mail addresses are not stored in Sent Address and Received Address.

<Restrictions> Setting Restrictions on Phonebook Entries

Restrict Dialing

You can disable making voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls to phone numbers other than specified ones. When you use the FOMA phone for business use, this function is useful for preventing the private use. Bring up the specified Phonebook entry and press or (Dial) to make a voice call. (To make a videophone call, press (V. phone), and to make a PushTalk call, press (Y. phone phone numbers.

Call Rejection

You can reject voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you do not want to receive to be rejected. The caller hears a busy tone. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers. This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.

Call Acceptance

You can receive voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls only from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you want to accept to be connected. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" simultaneously.

Restrict Dialing/Call Rejection/Call Acceptance

Detailed Phonebook display ► (FUNC)

➤ Restrictions ➤ Enter your Terminal Security Code ➤ Select an item.

 $\textbf{Restrict dialing} \dots . You can dial the specified phone$

numbers only.

 $\textbf{Call rejection}.\dots. You can reject calls from the$

specified phone numbers.

 $\textbf{Call acceptance}\,\dots \text{You can accept calls from the}$

specified phone numbers only.

Call forwarding See page 368. **Voice mail** See page 365.

The set item is indicated by " ".

- When a Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, press on the detailed display to highlight the phone number you will set Restrictions for.
- To set Restrict Dialing for multiple phone numbers, first set Restrict Dialing and press CLR to return to the detailed Phonebook display; to highlight the phone number to be set for Restrict Dialing and continue the operation. If you press to return to the Stand-by display, additional settings cannot be done. To do additional settings, release Restrict Dialing for the set phone number and activate Restrict Dialing again, including the released phone number.
- To release Restrictions, perform the same operation.

- You cannot set this function for Phonebook entries stored as secret data, and in the UIM Phonebook.
- If you activate "Personal data lock" while "Call rejection" or "Call acceptance" is set, you can accept all incoming calls.
- You cannot operate the following while "Restrict dialing" is set:
 - Calling up/Referring to phone numbers other than specified
 - Keypad dial (except for the calls to the specified phone numbers)
- Dialing from Received Calls (except for the calls from the specified phone numbers)
- Storing/Editing/Deleting Phonebook entries, copying Phonebook entries from the microSD memory card, and copying Phonebook entries to the UIM
- You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even if you set "Restrict dialing".

Information

- When a call comes in from the phone number set with "Call rejection", or from other than the phone number set with "Call acceptance", the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record and the icon of "Missed call" appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail regardless of the setting of "Call rejection" or "Call acceptance".

Check/Release Restrictions on Phonebook Entries

Phonebook Restrictions

- ► Enter your Terminal Security Code
- Select an item.
- The set item is indicated by " ".
- To release all the Phonebook entries set with Restrictions, press (FUNC), select "Release", and then select "YES".

Select a Phonebook entry.

The phone number set with Restrictions is displayed.

 To release "Restrictions" per phone number, select the phone number you want to release by following the same steps above, and select "YES".

<Call Setting without ID>



Setting Response to Incoming Calls without Caller ID

You can set whether to receive (accept) or not to receive (reject) a voice call, videophone call, and PushTalk call depending on the reason for no caller ID. There are three reasons; "Unavailable", "PublicPhone", and "User unset".

- Settings Lock/Security
 - ► Call setting w/o ID
 - ► Enter your Terminal Security Code
 - Select an item.

Unavailable

...Calls from the other party who cannot notify his/her phone number such as calls from overseas or from landline phones via call forwarding services.

(However, the caller ID might be notified depending on the telephone companies the calls go through.)

PublicPhone

. . . Calls from public phones, etc.

User unset

.. When the caller has set the caller ID not to be notified.

Accept or Reject

 If you select "Accept", go to step 2 on page 98 to select a ring tone.

If you select "Same as ring tone", the ring tone will be the one selected in "Phone" of "Select ring tone".

Information

- •If you select "Reject", the ring tone does not sound even if a call comes in, the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record and the "Missed call" icon appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail regardless of this setting.

<Ring Time>



Delaying Start of Ringing Operation

Settings ► Incoming call ► Ring time

Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation		
Ring start	You can set the FOMA phone not to start ringing		
time	operation immediately for when a voice call,		
	videophone call, or PushTalk call comes in from		
	the party whose phone number is not stored in		
	the Phonebook. This function is effective as a		
	countermeasure for blocking nuisance calls such		
	as one ring phone scam (one-giri).		
	➤ ON or OFF ➤ Enter a start time (seconds).		
	●Enter from "01" through "99" in two digits.		
Missed calls	You can set whether to display the call		
display	disconnected within the time specified for		
	"Ring start time" in Received Calls.		
	➤ Display or Not display		

- When a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the FOMA phone starts ringing as soon as the call comes in even if "186" / "184" is added to the phone number. However, during Personal Data Lock, or for the call from the party whose phone number is stored as secret data, ringing starts according to the setting of this function.
- If the ring start time is longer than the ring time for Record Message Setting, the ringing operations do not start, activating Record Message instead. To activate Record Message after starting the ringing operations, set the longer ring time for Record Message Setting than the ring start time. The same applies to the ring time for Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, and Auto Answer Setting.

<Reject Unknown>

Rejecting Calls from Phone Numbers which are not Stored in Phonebooks

You can reject voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls from the party whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook. This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.





MENU Settings Lock/Security

- Reject unknown
- ► Enter your Terminal Security Code
- Accept or Reject

Information

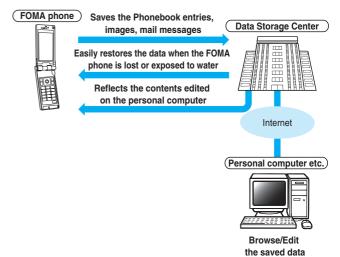
- If a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored as secret data, the call is not rejected, regardless of this setting.
- If you simultaneously activate "Reject unknown" and "Call acceptance" of "Restrictions", the latter has priority.
- When a call comes in from anyone whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook while you set this function to "Reject", the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record, and the notification icon of "Missed call" appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- Even when this function is set to "Reject", your FOMA phone follows the settings specified by "Call setting w/o ID" if each setting of "Call setting w/o ID" is set to "Accept".
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail regardless of this setting.
- You cannot set "Reject unknown" to "Reject" while "Ring start time" of "Ring time" is set to "ON".

What is Data Security Service?

Data Security Service enables you to save the Phonebook entries, images, and mail messages stored in your FOMA phone (saved data files) to the DoCoMo **Data Storage Center.**

You can restore the saved data files even when the FOMA phone is lost or exposed to water, to your new **FOMA phone from the Data Storage Center by** operating i-mode. Also, you can periodically and automatically update Phonebook entries on the FOMA phone to the latest information. Further, you can easily edit the saved data files stored at the Data Storage Center from My DoCoMo page via a personal computer, and can store the edited saved data files in the FOMA phone.

• For details on Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".



 Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis.

(You need to subscribe to i-mode to apply for Data Security Service.)

Other "Security Settings"

Other than introduced in this chapter, the following functions/services for the Security Settings are available:

If you want	Functions/ Service name	Reference page
To prevent crank calls or vicious sales calls from incoming	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P.368
To prevent the incoming call that does not notify a caller ID	Caller ID Request	P.369
To ensure safe and reliable data communication by using electronic certificate services **Limited to FirstPass sites*	FirstPass	P.165
To protect the IC card function from being used illegally	IC Card Lock	P.230
To update software programs in the FOMA phone when necessary	Software Update	P.434
To protect the FOMA phone from data liable to cause trouble	Scanning Function	P.440
To receive necessary mail only from among the large volume of incoming mail	Receive Option	P.183

If you want	Functions/	Reference
n you want	Service name	page
To store/check safety information using i-mode when a disaster occurs To change/confirm the mail address To reject mail with URL	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service Change/Confirm Mail Address Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with	
To accept or reject mail from the specified domain To accept or reject mail between i-mode mobile phones only To accept or reject mail from the specified address	URL) Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
To reject SMS messages	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	*
To reject the 200th and succeeding i-mode mail messages sent from a single i-mode phone on the same day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertising mail that is sent unilaterally	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the file size of incoming mail	Limit Mail Size	
To confirm the settings for the mail function	Confirm Settings	
To stop the mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To check whereabouts of lost mobile phone	Keitai-Osagashi Service	

^{**}Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]"

Information

 The priority order of functions simultaneously set to prevent nuisance calls is as follows: "Nuisance Call Blocking Service" "Call rejection" "Reject unknown/Call setting w/o ID" "Ring time".

Camera

Before Using Cameras	132
Shooting Still Images	139
Shooting Moving ImagesMoving Image Shoot	141
Changing Settings for Shooting Images	142
Setting Image Size and Image Quality	143
Using Bar Code ReaderBar Code Reader	146
Using Text Reader	149

■Copyrights and Portrait Rights

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute the contents of which a third party holds the copyright such as text, image, music, or software programs downloaded from web pages on the Internet, or recorded using this product, without permission from the copyright holder except for when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed by the copyright law.

Note that it may be prohibited to shoot or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use. Make sure that you refrain from shooting portraits of other persons and distributing such portraits over the Internet without consent, as this may violate portrait rights.

• You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA phone to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Before Using Cameras

Notes for when Shooting Images

- Check the lens for any stain before shooting. If the lens is stained, clean the lens with a soft cloth. If the lens is stained with fingerprints or something oily, you will not be able to focus on a subject, or the stains are reflected on still or moving images you shoot.
- · Make sure that you do not let fingers, hairs, or the strap overlap the lens when shooting.
- Make sure that you hold the FOMA phone securely with your hands so that it does not move when shooting.
 Otherwise, the image may be blurred, especially in a dark place.
- Do not leave the FOMA phone with the lens pointing direct to the sunlight. Pixels may be discolored or burns may result.
- If you shoot under a fluorescent lamp, mercury lamp, or sodium lamp flickering at high speeds, "flicker symptom", horizontal stripes flow from top to bottom or left to right of the display, may result. The color tone for the image may vary depending on a shooting timing.
- If you shoot a subject containing an area of an extremely high brightness such as the reflection of sun light, the bright area might be black-spotted but this is not a malfunction.
- · Images shot by the cameras might differ from actual subjects in color tone and brightness.
- · When the battery level is low, you may not be able to save still or moving shot images.
- A slight time lag is found between when you press () (Record) and when you actually shoot. Therefore, if you shoot a fast moving subject, the subject might be shot with its position slightly away from the one you see it when you press () (Record).
- Do not remove the microSD memory card while saving files to it. The FOMA phone or microSD memory card could malfunction.
- · If you turn off the power while saving a file, an incomplete file may be saved.
- If the battery pack is removed off while saving a file to the FOMA phone or microSD memory card, that data becomes contingent.
- You need to obtain a microSD memory card separately to use the functions related to the microSD memory card.
 The microSD memory card is available at mass retailers for home electric appliances, etc.
 (See page 293)

Use Cameras

You can use the cameras to shoot still or moving images.

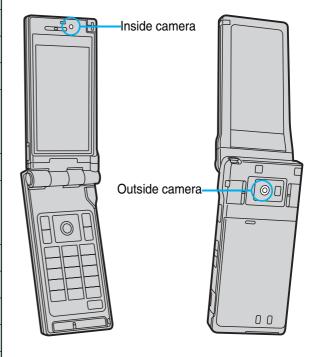
You can switch between the front (inside camera) and the back (outside camera).

The outside camera comes with the automatic focusing function to automatically focus on subjects. (See page 143) The image stabilizer enables you to shoot images with less blur. (See page 144)

You can easily operate the main functions for shooting not only from the Function menu but also by operating the keys.

Keys used for shooting

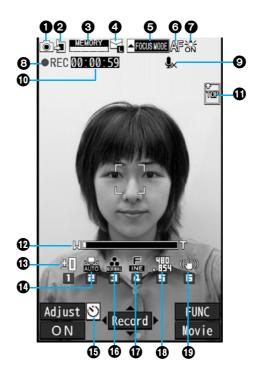
Operate icon menu	
Call out function menu	ĒR
Photo light (when the outside camera is used) • Each time of pressing switches between "ON" and "OFF".	MENU
Shutter/Save	•
Tele	0
Wide	0
Switch settings for Focus (when the outside camera is used) • Each time of pressing switches in order of "Auto" "Close-up" "Landscape".	Ō
Autofocus (when the outside camera is used)	0
Change camera-mode • Each time of pressing switches in order of "Photo mode" "Movie mode" "Continuous mode".	
Switch displays for Icons	A
Brightness	1
White balance	2
Photo mode	3
Image quality	4
Image size	5
Image stabilizer	6
Auto timer	Z
Switch setting for Store in Each time of pressing switches between "Phone" and "microSD".	9
Switch camera • Each time of pressing switches between inside camera and outside camera.	•
End camera (in ordinary time) Release focus lock (when focus is locked)	CLR
End camera	*
-	



- While the camera is activated, the photo light flickers. You cannot turn off flickering.
- You cannot change or silence the volume of the shutter sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody for the shutter sound, either.
- If no key operation is done on the Finder display, the camera is automatically deactivated after about three minutes.
- When you shoot in a dark place, ensure to set "Photo mode" of "Camera settings" to "Night mode".
- You can operate the following by the Icon menu: "Brightness", "White balance", "Photo mode", "Image quality", "Image size", "Image size", by the Icon Menu.

Camera Setting and Finder Display

On the Finder display, the settings are indicated by bars and icons.



Icon/bar name	lcon	Description	Page
⊕ Camera mode	(a)	Photo mode	P.139
		Movie mode	P.141
	A/M/	Continuous mode (Auto, Manual, Auto bracket)	P.139
2Store in	-	Phone: Stores in the FOMA phone.	D 444
	45	microSD: Stores on the microSD memory card.	P.144
3 Number of recordable		Number of remaining recordable still images	
image		Up to 999 images are displayed.	_
Memory capacity bar	MEMORY	Memory usage state (estimate) in Movie mode	_
		Displayed in red when the memory space reaches maximum.	_
4File size setting	S	Mail restrict'n (S): Up to 500 Kbytes can be saved.	
		Mail restrict'n (L): Up to 2 Mbytes can be saved.	P.143
	LONG	Long time: Long time recording is possible.	
⑤ Focus guide	FOCUS MODE	Focus guide	_
6 Focus	AF	Auto	
	\$	Close-up	P.144
	2	Landscape	
⊘ Photo light	N ON	Photo light on	P.143
3Shooting status	●REC	During moving image recording	P.141
Movie type set	⊉ ×	Records only the video.	P.145
Recordable time	_	Recordable time (estimate) for moving images	_
⊕ Top icon	TOP	Shows the vertical direction of the still or moving image.	_
⊉ Zoom bar	N ■ T	Zooming status	P.142
® Brightness	-51 ~ +51	Brightness of shot image	P.143

Icon/bar name Icon		Icon	Description				Page		
()	White balance	AUTO	Aut	o: Fo	r adj	justing white balance automatically			
		306	Fin	e: For	sho	poting outdoors in fine weather			
		0	Clo	udy: l	or s	shooting in cloudy weather or in the shade	P.143		
		Ligi	Light bulb: For shooting under incandescent light						
			Flu	Fluorescent light: For shooting under fluorescent light					
(Number of frames for continuous shooting	1	Nui	Number of frames at "Manual" shooting in "Continuous mode"					
	Auto timer	<u></u>	Auto timer ON			N	P.146		
(Photo mode	NORMAL	No	Normal					
		\mathfrak{D}	Por	Portrait					
		E. S.	Spo	Sports					
		TO 1	Foo	od					
		≥	Sce	enery					
		F	Nig	ht mo	de		P.144		
		3	Bad	ckligh	t				
			Cha	aracte	r				
		3	Sno	Snow					
			Sur	Sunset					
		57	Pet	Pet					
(D)	mage quality	ORMAI.	Noi	rmal:	Stan	ndard quality	P.143		
		F	Fin	e: Fai	rly h	nigh quality			
		S	Sup	oer fin	e: H	ligh quality			
13	Image size	74-7-1 24-1-1-1		5M (2592 x 1944)					
	(Photo mode/	24-1-1-1 24-1-1-1		3.7M Wide (2592 x 1456)					
	Continuous mode)	다마: ※ F =15		ЗМ	3M (2048 x 1536)				
		हिन्द्र। ज्ञीनाम	oto	2M	2M Wide (1920 x 1080)				
		ाना। श्रमण	ara ph	톱 2M (1600 x 1200)					
		2 : I-1 2 : I-1	came	Stai	nd-b	y (480 x 854)			
		341 ≥ 4:11	Outside camera photo	 알		VGA (640 x 480)			
		EF 1 ≈ 1:1:	nO	a phc	s sho	CIF (352 x 288)	P.143		
		210 22 Edu		Inside camera photo	Continuous shot	QVGA (240 x 320)			
		× 111		side o	Conti	QCIF (176 x 144)			
		11: ≈ 11:		<u> </u>		Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)			
	Image size	340 ≈ 430	VG	A (64	480)				
	(Movie mode)	3 E F	HV	HVGA Wide		IVGA Wide (640 x 352)			
		<u>₽</u>	QVGA (320 x 240)						
			QC	QCIF (176 x 144)					
		∏ 215	Sul	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)					
1	mage stabilizer		lma	Image stabilizer (Auto or OFF)					

Specifications for Still Image Shooting

File format	JPEG
Compression format	Baseline format
Pixels	Photo: 5M (2592 x 1944), 3.7M Wide (2592 x 1456), 3M (2048 x 1536), 2M Wide (1920 x 1080), 2M (1600 x 1200), Stand-by (480 x 854), VGA (640 x 480), CIF (352 x 288), QVGA (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) Continuous Shooting: VGA (640 x 480), CIF (352 x 288), QVGA (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
Extension	jpg
Title	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was saved and the number of shot frames (when the 1st frame was shot at 10:00 on November 15, 2007) "2007/11/15 10:00"
File name	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was saved and the number of shot frames (when the 1st frame was shot at 10:00 on November 15, 2007) "200711151000000" (Store in: Phone) "P1000001" (Store in: microSD)
Maximum file size	1.8 Mbytes
Mail attachment/Output	Can be attached to mail or output from the FOMA phone by using the microSD memory card.
Memory capacity	Approx. 101.6 Mbytes (Phone) See page 136 for the microSD memory card.

Estimate of the number of storable still images

The number of files that can be saved varies depending on shooting environments.

★The number of files that can be saved to the FOMA phone and microSD memory card has limit.

■The number of files that can be saved to P905i

Image quality Image size	Super fine (Approx.)	Fine (Approx.)	Normal (Approx.)		
5M (2592 x 1944)	54	74	97		
3.7M Wide (2592 x 1456)	81	97	121		
3M (2048 x 1536)	97	120	137		
2M Wide (1920 x 1080)	139	191	237		
2M (1600 x 1200)	139	191	237		
Stand-by (480 x 854)	649	880	1,080		
VGA (640 x 480)	950	1,131	1,320		
CIF (352 x 288)	1,697	2,160	2,500		
QVGA (240 x 320)	1,980	2,500	2,500		
QCIF (176 x 144)	2,500	2,500	2,500		
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	2,500	2,500	2,500		

■The number of files that can be saved to the microSD memory card (64 Mbytes)

Image quality Image size	Super fine (Approx.)	Fine (Approx.)	Normal (Approx.)	
5M (2592 x 1944)	34	47	62	
3.7M Wide (2592 x 1456)	51	62	77	
3M (2048 x 1536)	62	77	87	
2M Wide (1920 x 1080)	89	122	152	
2M (1600 x 1200)	89	122	152	
Stand-by (480 x 854)	411	563	691	
VGA (640 x 480)	608	724	845	
CIF (352 x 288)	1,087	1,383	1,902	
QVGA (240 x 320)	1,268	1,691	2,174	
QCIF (176 x 144)	2,536	3,044	3,805	
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	3,805	5,073	5,073	

[•] The number of files that can be saved is an estimate.

Specifications for Moving Image Shooting

File format	MP4, ASF				
Coding system	Video: MPEG4 Voice: AMR, G.726				
Pixels	VGA (640 x 480), HVGA Wide (640 x 352), QVGA (320 x 240), QCIF (176 x 144),				
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)				
Extension	3gp, mp4, asf				
Title	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was recorded				
	(when shot at 10:00 on November 15, 2007)				
	"2007/11/15 10:00"				
File name	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was recorded				
(when shot at 10:00 on November 15, 2007)					
	"200711151000" (Store in: Phone)				
	"MOL001" (Store in: microSD)				
Maximum file size	2 Mbytes (Store in: Phone)				
	Can be limited to the size which can be attached to i-motion mail when shooting. (See page 143)				
Mail attachment/Output	Can be attached to mail or output from the FOMA phone by using the microSD memory card.				
Memory capacity	Approx. 101.6 Mbytes (Phone)				
	See page 138 for the microSD memory card.				

Estimate of recordable time

The recordable time varies depending on shooting environments. Take reference to the recordable time and memory capacity which appears on the Finder display.

■ Recordable time to P905i

	File size	Movie	Recordable t	ime per record	ing (Approx.)	Total recordable time (Approx.)			
Image size	File size setting	Movie type set		Image quality		Image quality			
	Setting	type set	Super fine	Fine	Normal	Super fine	Fine	Normal	
	Mail	Normal	2 sec	4 sec	8 sec	349 sec	11 min	22 min	
	restriction	Video	2 sec	4 sec	8 sec	351 sec	11 min	22 min	
VGA	(S)	Voice		305 sec		957 min			
(640 x 480)	Mail	Normal	8 sec	16 sec	30 sec	349 sec	11 min	22 min	
	restriction	Video	8 sec	16 sec	30 sec	351 sec	11 min	22 min	
	(L)	Voice	20 min			957 min			
	Mail	Normal	3 sec	5 sec	10 sec	464 sec	15 min	29 min	
	restriction	Video	3 sec	5 sec	10 sec	468 sec	15 min	30 min	
HVGA Wide	(S)	Voice		305 sec		957 min			
(640 x 352)	Mail	Normal	11 sec	20 sec	40 sec	464 sec	15 min	29 min	
	restriction	Video	11 sec	20 sec	40 sec	468 sec	15 min	30 min	
	(L)	Voice		20 min		957 min			
	Mail	Normal	4 sec	5 sec	15 sec	11 min	15 min	44 min	
	restriction	Video	4 sec	5 sec	15 sec	11 min	15 min	45 min	
QVGA	(S)	Voice		305 sec			957 min		
(320 x 240)	Mail	Normal	16 sec	20 sec	59 sec	11 min	15 min	44 min	
	restriction	Video	16 sec	20 sec	60 sec	11 min	15 min	45 min	
	(L)	Voice		20 min		957 min			
	Mail	Normal	10 sec	35 sec	69 sec	29 min	108 min	213 min	
	restriction	Video	10 sec	39 sec	78 sec	30 min	121 min	243 min	
QCIF	(S)	Voice		305 sec			957 min		
(176 x 144)	Mail	Normal	39 sec	141 sec	279 sec	29 min	108 min	213 min	
	restriction	Video	40 sec	159 sec	318 sec	30 min	121 min	243 min	
	(L)	Voice		20 min		957 min			
	Mail	Normal	19 sec	62 sec	122 sec	57 min	194 min	380 min	
	restriction	Video	20 sec	78 sec	156 sec	60 min	243 min	487 min	
Sub-QCIF	(S)	Voice		305 sec			957 min		
(128 x 96)	Mail	Normal	75 sec	254 sec	497 sec	57 min	194 min	380 min	
	restriction	Video	80 sec	318 sec	10 min	60 min	243 min	487 min	
	(L)	Voice		20 min			957 min		

•The recordable time is an estimate.

■ Recordable time to microSD memory card (64 Mbytes)

	File eine	Marrie	Recordable t	ime per record	ling (Approx.)	Total recordable time (Approx.)		
Image size	File size setting	Movie type set		Image quality			Image quality	
		., po co:	Super fine	Fine	Normal	Super fine	Fine	Normal
VOA.		Normal	227 sec	447 sec	14 min	227 sec	447 sec	14 min
VGA (640 x 480)		Video	231 sec	462 sec	15 min	231 sec	462 sec	15 min
(6.16 % 166)		Voice		180 min			240 min	
1111/O A 14/5-1-		Normal	301 sec	577 sec	18 min	301 sec	577 sec	18 min
HVGA Wide (640 x 352)	-	Video	308 sec	10 min	20 min	308 sec	10 min	20 min
(0.10 % 002)		Voice		180 min		240 min		
OVOA		Normal	447 sec	577 sec	26 min	447 sec	577 sec	26 min
QVGA (320 x 240)	Long time	Video	462 sec	10 min	30 min	462 sec	10 min	30 min
(020 // 210)		Voice		180 min			240 min	
0015		Normal	18 min	60 min	96 min	18 min	60 min	96 min
QCIF (176 x 144)		Video	20 min	80 min	160 min	20 min	80 min	160 min
(,		Voice		180 min			240 min	
Cub OOL		Normal	34 min	96 min	137 min	34 min	96 min	137 min
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)		Video	40 min	160 min	180 min	40 min	160 min	320 min
(120 /1 00)		Voice		180 min			240 min	

[•] The recordable time is an estimate.